

## A large, abstract sculpture of a tree. The trunk is thick and textured, with a light beige or off-white color. It has a complex, branching structure with many smaller, thinner branches extending outwards. The foliage is dense and dark green, covering the upper and outer parts of the sculpture. The overall shape is somewhat rounded and bushy. The sculpture is set against a light, neutral background.

[illegible]

<sup>1</sup> University of Florence; <sup>2</sup> Italian National Institute for Environmental Protection and Research (ISPRA); <sup>3</sup> University of Padua; <sup>4</sup> Free University of Bozen; <sup>5</sup> Queen Mary University of London.

October 2016

## ***Premise***

This guidebook provides a detailed description of the Morphological Quality Index (MQI) and some integrated tools (MQIm, HMQI). The Morphological Quality Index (MQI) was originally developed in Italy (Rinaldi et al., 2013), and then expanded and applied to other European countries within the context of the REFORM project (Rinaldi et al., 2015).

The guidebook is an extension of the REFORM report (Rinaldi et al., 2015) with more emphasis on low-energy streams and the inclusion of an Extended River Typology (ERT, Rinaldi et al., 2016), which is helpful at various phases of characterization and assessment. Furthermore, an original tool, the Hydro-Morphological Quality Index (HMQI), has been developed and is described in detail. This tool includes an additional indicator, concerning the alteration of flows without potentially relevant effects on channel morphology, which provides the opportunity to make an assessment of the overall hydromorphological condition of a river reach.

The Evaluation Forms for confined and for partly confined/unconfined streams respectively, a detailed Guide to the Compilation of the Evaluation Forms, which is used to support the application of the two indices, and an Illustrated Guide are provided in the Appendixes of this guidebook.

## ***Acknowledgements***

The research has received funding from ISPRA (Istituto Superiore per la Protezione e la Ricerca Ambientale, Roma) (project “Development of a system for the analysis, post-monitoring evaluation and definition of measures of impact mitigation aimed to an integrated management according to European Directives 2000/60/CE and 2007/60/CE”), and from the European Union’s FP7 programme under Grant Agreement No. 282656 (REFORM).

Laura Nardi, Barbara Belletti, Barbara Lastoria, and Bruno Golfieri have contributed in various stages of the research and are acknowledged.

## **Summary**

<b>1</b>	<b>The Morphological Quality Index (MQI).....</b>	<b>7</b>
1.1	Introduction .....	7
1.2	Main characteristics of the method .....	7
1.3	General setting and segmentation .....	8
1.3.1	Step 1: Physiographic setting.....	9
1.3.2	Step 2: Confinement.....	11
1.3.3	Step 3: Channel morphology .....	14
1.3.4	Step 4: Other elements for reach delineation .....	18
1.4	Further characterization .....	19
1.4.1	The Extended River Typology (ERT).....	21
1.4.2	Low-energy alluvial reaches .....	27
1.5	Structure and key components of the evaluation procedure .....	28
1.6	Indicators .....	30
1.7	Classes and scores of the indicators.....	33
1.8	Calculation of the Morphological Quality Index (MQI) .....	36
1.9	Application of the MQI .....	38
1.9.1	Expertise .....	38
1.9.2	Working phases and time required.....	38
1.9.3	Ranges of application .....	40
<b>2</b>	<b>Integrated tools: HMQI and MQIm.....</b>	<b>41</b>
2.1	The Hydro-Morphological Quality Index (HMQI) .....	41
2.2	The Morphological Quality Index for monitoring (MQIm).....	41
2.2.1	Introduction .....	41
2.2.2	Characteristics of the MQIm and differences with the MQI.....	42
2.2.3	Scoring system and mathematical functions .....	42
2.2.4	Evaluation procedures, limitations and applications.....	44
<b>3</b>	<b>References .....</b>	<b>46</b>
	<b>Appendix 1. Evaluation Form for Confined Channels .....</b>	<b>50</b>
	<b>Appendix 2. Evaluation Form for Partly Confined or Unconfined Channels.....</b>	<b>56</b>
	<b>Appendix 3. Guide to the Compilation of the Evaluation Forms .....</b>	<b>62</b>
A3.1	Introduction .....	63
A3.2	Generality and delineation of spatial units.....	63
A3.3	Geomorphological Functionality .....	64
A3.3.1	F1: Longitudinal continuity in sediment and wood flux .....	64
A3.3.2	F2: Presence of a modern floodplain .....	67
A3.3.3	F3: Hillslope – river corridor connectivity .....	73
A3.3.4	F4: Processes of bank retreat.....	74
A3.3.5	F5: Presence of a potentially erodible corridor.....	78
A3.3.6	F6: Bed configuration – valley slope .....	80
A3.3.7	F7: Planform pattern.....	83
A3.3.8	F8: Presence of typical fluvial forms in the floodplain .....	90
A3.3.9	F9: Cross-section variability .....	92
A3.3.10	F10: Structure of the channel bed .....	98
A3.3.11	F11: Presence of in-channel large wood .....	102
A3.3.12	F12: Width of functional vegetation.....	105
A3.3.13	F13: Linear extension of functional vegetation.....	109

<b>A3.4</b>	<b>Artificiality .....</b>	<b>111</b>
A3.4.1	A1: Upstream alteration of flows .....	112
A3.4.2	A2: Upstream alteration of sediment discharges .....	119
A3.4.3	A3: Alteration of flows in the reach .....	126
A3.4.4	A4: Alteration of sediment discharge in the reach .....	128
A3.4.5	A5: Crossing structures .....	132
A3.4.6	A6: Bank protections .....	134
A3.4.7	A7: Artificial levées .....	136
A3.4.8	A8: Artificial changes of the river course .....	139
A3.4.9	A9: Other bed stabilization structures .....	142
A3.4.10	A10: Sediment removal .....	146
A3.4.11	A11: Wood removal .....	148
A3.4.12	A12: Vegetation management .....	150
<b>A3.5</b>	<b>Channel Adjustments .....</b>	<b>154</b>
A3.5.1	CA1: Adjustments in channel pattern .....	154
A3.5.2	CA2: Adjustments in channel width .....	159
A3.5.3	CA3: Bed-level adjustments .....	162
<b>A3.6</b>	<b>Scores .....</b>	<b>166</b>
<b>A3.7</b>	<b>Sub-indices .....</b>	<b>167</b>
<b>A3.8</b>	<b>References .....</b>	<b>176</b>

## List of Figures

Figure 1.1	Delineation of the catchment of the Volturno River (Italy) into landscape units. ....	10
Figure 1.2	Panoramic views of the landscape units in the Volturno River catchment. ....	10
Figure 1.3	Confinement classes. ....	12
Figure 1.4	Examples of different confinement classes. ....	13
Figure 1.5	The seven river types of the Basic River Typology (BRT) used for the delineation phase. ....	15
Figure 1.6	Morphologies of confined channels. ....	16
Figure 1.7	Examples of morphologies of partly confined and unconfined channels. ....	17
Figure 1.8	Examples of discontinuities considered during the final step of segmentation. ....	19
Figure 1.9	Initial distinction of bed configuration at reach scale. ....	20
Figure 1.10	Classification of bed configuration at reach-scale in single-thread, alluvial channels. ....	20
Figure 1.11	Reach-scale morphologies in single-thread, alluvial channels. ....	21
Figure 1.12	River types from 0 to 7 of the Extended River Typology. ....	24
Figure 1.13	River types from 8 to 22 of the Extended River Typology. ....	24
Figure 2.1	Procedure for the definition of the mathematical function of a MQIm indicator deriving from the discrete classes of the same MQI indicator. ....	44
Figure A3. 1	Longitudinal continuity in sediment and wood flux. ....	64
Figure A3. 2	Longitudinal continuity in sediment and wood flux. ....	65
Figure A3. 3	Longitudinal continuity in sediment and wood flux. ....	66
Figure A3. 4	Sketch of the interactions between F2 and other related indicators. ....	69
Figure A3. 5	Differences between a modern floodplain and a recent terrace. ....	71
Figure A3. 6	Case 1. ....	71
Figure A3. 7	Case 2. ....	72
Figure A3. 8	Case 3. ....	72
Figure A3. 9	Case 4. ....	72
Figure A3. 10	Case 5. ....	73
Figure A3. 11	Case 6. ....	73
Figure A3. 12	Connectivity between hillslopes and fluvial corridor. ....	74
Figure A3. 13	Processes of bank retreat. ....	77



Figure A3. 14 Potentially erodible corridor.	79
Figure A3. 15 Bed configuration and valley slope.	82
Figure A3. 16 Bed configuration and valley slope.	82
Figure A3. 17 Examples of altered reaches.	87
Figure A3. 18. Planform pattern: examples for multi-thread, transitional, and single-thread channels.	89
Figure A3. 19 Presence of typical fluvial forms in the alluvial plain.	91
Figure A3. 20 Presence of typical fluvial forms in the floodplain.	92
Figure A3. 21 Variability of the cross-section.	94
Figure A3. 22 Variability of the cross-section in confined channels.	95
Figure A3. 23 Alteration of cross-section variability in partly- and unconfined channels.	96
Figure A3. 24 Variability of the cross-section in partly- and unconfined channels.	97
Figure A3. 25 Some types of alterations of the substrate.	100
Figure A3. 26 Alteration of substrate in confined channels.	101
Figure A3. 27 Alterations of substrate in partly- and unconfined channels.	101
Figure A3. 28 Presence of large wood.	103
Figure A3. 29 Vegetation in the fluvial corridor	105
Figure A3. 30 Width of functional vegetation in confined channels.	107
Figure A3. 31 Width of fluvial corridor in partly- and unconfined channels.	108
Figure A3. 32 Width of functional vegetation in partly confined and unconfined channels.	108
Figure A3. 33 Linear extension of the functional riparian vegetation along the banks.	110
Figure A3. 34 Rule for assigning a transversal structure that coincides with the limit between two reaches and its effects on the alteration of sediment and water discharges.	111
Figure A3. 35 Flow chart of the indicator A1.	114
Figure A3. 36 Alteration of flows. Typical alteration structures.	116
Figure A3. 37 Range of channel-forming discharges.	116
Figure A3. 38 Upstream alteration of flows.	117
Figure A3. 39 Transversal structures of alteration of sediment discharges in mountain areas.	123
Figure A3. 40 Transversal structures of alteration of sediment discharges in hilly and lowland areas.	124
Figure A3. 41 Upstream alteration of sediment discharges (1).	125
Figure A3.39 Upstream alteration of sediment discharges (2).	126
Figure A3. 42 Other structures that can cause an alteration of flows within a reach.	127
Figure A3. 43 Alteration of flows in the reach.	128
Figure A3. 44 Rule of evaluation of the effects of a dam/reservoir at the downstream limit of the reach.	129
Figure A3. 45 Alteration of sediment transport.	131
Figure A3. 46 Cases with very high density of transversal structures:	131
Figure A3. 47 Crossing structures.	133
Figure A3. 48 Crossing structures.	133
Figure A3. 49 Bank protections types.	135
Figure A3. 50 Bank protections: classification.	135
Figure A3. 51 Case of groynes.	136
Figure A3. 52 Artificial levées.	138
Figure A3. 53 Artificial levees.	138
Figure A3. 54 Cases of bank-edge levées occurring for most of the reach.	139
Figure A3. 55 Artificial changes of river course.	141
Figure A3. 56 Drainage and dredging works in Low-Energy, fine-grained streams.	141
Figure A3. 57 Artificial changes of river course.	142
Figure A3. 58 Other bed stabilization structures and revetments.	144
Figure A3. 59 Other bed stabilization structures and/or revetments.	145
Figure A3. 60 Sediment removal.	147
Figure A3. 61 Wood removal.	149
Figure A3. 62 Vegetation management.	153
Figure A3. 63 Adjustments in channel pattern.	158
Figure A3. 64 Adjustments in channel width.	161
Figure A3. 65 Bed-level changes.	164
Figure A3. 66 Field evidence of incision.	164
Figure A3. 67 Estimation of the amount of incision based on differences in elevation among surfaces.	165

## List of Tables

Table 1.1 Summary of the general setting and segmentation procedure. ....	9
Table 1.2 Definition of final confinement classes by combining confinement degree and confinement index. ....	12
Table 1.3 Criteria and threshold values of indices or other distinctive characteristics for the morphological classification of partly confined and unconfined channels. n.a.: not applied. ....	15
Table 1.4 Characteristic geomorphic units defining the bed configuration of alluvial channels at reach scale. ....	20
Table 1.5 Main characteristics of the 7 Basic River Types and 22 morphological types of the Extended River Typology. ....	23
Table 1.6 Description of the 22 morphological types of the Extended River Types (ERT). ....	25
Table 1.7 List of indicators as a function of the main aspects (continuity, morphology, vegetation) and components of assessment (functionality, artificiality, channel adjustments). ....	30
Table 1.8 Definition, assessed parameters, assessment methods, and ranges of application of each indicator. ....	31
Table 1.9 Indicators of geomorphological functionality: description of classes and definition of scores. ....	34
Table 1.10 Indicators of artificiality: description of classes and definition of scores. ....	35
Table 2.1 Main differences between MQI and MQIm. ....	42
Table 2.2 List of indicators for which the scores are defined by mathematical functions. ....	43
Table A3. 1 Relations between range of bed slope and expected bed forms. ....	81
Table A3. 2 Channel morphologies generally expected for some main physical settings. ....	86
Table A3. 3 Definition of the classes for the indicator A1. ....	114
Table A3. 4 Flow chart for indicator A1H. ....	119
Table A3. 5 Definition of classes for indicator A2. ....	121
Table A3. 6 Flow chart of the indicator A2. ....	122
Table A3. 7 Definition of classes as a function of the length of bank-edge and close levées. ....	137
Table A3. 8 Definition of the classes for the indicator A12 when management of emergent aquatic macrophytes occurs. ....	151
Table A3. 9 Classes for the different possible adjustments in channel morphologies. ....	156

# 1 The Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

## 1.1 Introduction

The EU Water Framework Directive (WFD) introduced the term ‘hydromorphology’, which requires the consideration of any modifications to flow regime, sediment transport, river morphology, and lateral channel mobility. Several methods have been adopted for implementing the WFD in European countries — in most cases coinciding with physical habitat assessment procedures (e.g., RHS, Raven et al., 1997; Lawa, 2000).

A critical analysis of hydromorphological assessment methods has been conducted in the REFORM Deliverable 1.1 (Rinaldi et al., 2013), and summarized in Belletti et al. (2015), with the aim of identifying the main strengths, limitations, gaps, possible integration of different approaches, and needs for further improvements. The main gap identified in most methods is an insufficient consideration of physical processes.

To address this gap, an increasing effort has been recently made to develop methods based on a sounder geomorphological approach, with a stronger consideration of physical processes at appropriate spatial and temporal scales. The River Styles Framework (Brierley and Fryirs, 2005), the SYRAH (Système Relationnel d’Audit de l’Hydromorphologie des Cours d’Eau; Chandesris et al., 2008), the IHG (Indice Hydrogeomorfologico; Ollero et al., 2007, 2011), the method proposed by Wyżga et al. (2010, 2012), and the Morphological Quality Index (MQI) (Rinaldi et al., 2013) are examples of morphological assessment procedures that are based on a geomorphological approach.

The Morphological Quality Index (MQI) was initially developed to be specifically suitable for the Italian context, i.e. cover the full range of physical conditions, morphological types, degree of artificial alterations, and amount of channel adjustments. During the REFORM project (Gurnell et al., 2014; Rinaldi et al., 2015), this method has been verified and expanded to cover the full range of physical conditions (physiographic units, hydrological, and climatic conditions, etc.) and the morphological types of rivers at European scale.

## 1.2 Main characteristics of the method

The main characteristics and innovative features of the MQI can be summarized as follows (Rinaldi et al., 2013).

- (i) The method is based on an *expert judgement* (i.e., a selection of variables, indicators, classes, and relative scores), deriving from the specific knowledge and experience of the authors. This reflects the use of a ‘special’ rather than a ‘natural’ classification scheme (Sneath and Snokal, 1973; Kondolf, 1995; Kondolf et al., 2003a).
- (ii) The method was designed to comply with *WFD requirements*, but could be used for other purposes in river management.
- (iii) Because the method is to be used by environmental or water agencies on a national level, it has been designed to be *relatively simple and not excessively time consuming*. However, its application should be carried out by trained people with an appropriate background and sufficient skills in fluvial geomorphology.
- (iv) The method is based on the *consideration of processes* (‘process-based’) rather than only of channel forms. Aspects such as continuity in sediment and wood flux, bank erosion, lateral mobility, and channel adjustments are taken into account. On the other hand, it is worth stressing that the aim of the method is to assess morphological quality, and not to

provide a quantification of processes or an in-depth understanding of channel evolution and future dynamics. A rigorous evaluation of geomorphological processes would imply measurements at different times of process rates (e.g., bank erosion or deposition) or the use of quantitative modelling or analyses (e.g., to assess alterations in sediment transport). Such a quantification is not feasible having in mind the previous point (iii).

(v) The *temporal component* is explicitly accounted for by considering that an historical analysis of channel adjustments provides insight into the causes and time of alterations and into future geomorphic changes. Lack of consideration of the temporal component is considered as one of the main limitations of many of the other geomorphic classification schemes (Kondolf et al., 2003a). In this method, we explicitly include indicators of channel adjustments in the evaluation of river morphological quality.

(vi) Concerning the *spatial scales*, the multiscale, hierarchical approach developed in REFORM by Gurnell et al. (2014, 2016) is adopted, where the 'reach' (i.e., a section of river along which present boundary conditions are sufficiently uniform, commonly a few kilometres in length) is the basic spatial unit for the application of the evaluation procedure.

(vii) *Morphological conditions* are evaluated exclusively in terms of physical forms and processes without any reasoning on their consequences or implications in terms of ecological state. This means that a high morphological quality is not necessarily related to a good ecological state, although this is commonly the case. In fact, it is widely recognised that the geomorphic dynamics of a river and the functioning of natural physical processes spontaneously promote the creation and maintenance of habitats and ensure the ecosystem's integrity (e.g., Kondolf et al., 2003b; Brierley and Fryirs, 2005; Wohl et al., 2005; Florsheim et al., 2008; Fryirs et al., 2008; Habersack and Piégay, 2008).

(viii) *Reference conditions*. According to the WFD, the reference state is given by 'undisturbed' conditions showing no or only 'very minor' human impacts (European Commission, 2003). A detailed discussion on reference conditions for hydromorphology is reported in Rinaldi et al. (2013). In synthesis, reference conditions for the MQI entail a river reach in dynamic equilibrium, where the river is performing those morphological functions that are expected for a specific morphological typology, and where artificiality is absent or does not significantly affect the river dynamics at the catchment and reach scale.

(ix) The MQI is not suitable for *assessing small changes* in morphological quality and, more generally, for monitoring the effects of a specific management or restoration action. For this purpose, the Morphological Quality Index for monitoring (MQIm: see chapter 2) should be used.

(x) Though the MQI does not provide an explicit "*target vision*" for possible river restoration, the evaluation structure provides a rational framework that is potentially useful for supporting analyses of interventions and impacts and for identifying and prioritizing management strategies, adequate restoration schemes, and measurement programmes.

### **1.3 General setting and segmentation**

The first phase of the method is aimed at providing a general setting of physical conditions and subdividing the river network into relatively homogeneous reaches, defined as sections of river along which present boundary conditions are sufficiently uniform (i.e., with no significant changes in valley setting, channel slope, imposed flow and sediment load; Brierley and Fryirs, 2005; Gurnell et al., 2014).

This delineation phase coincides with the multi-scale hierarchical framework developed in REFORM (see Gurnell et al., 2014 and Rinaldi et al., 2015 for more details). The final product of this phase is the subdivision of the river network into reaches. These are commonly a few kilometres in length and represent the elementary spatial units for the assessment of the morphological conditions.

**Table 1.1 Summary of the general setting and segmentation procedure.**  
(modified from Rinaldi et al., 2013)

Steps	Criteria	Outputs
<i>Step 1: general setting and identification of landscape (or physiographic) units and segments</i>	- geological and geomorphological characteristics	- <i>Landscape units</i> - <i>Segments</i>
<i>Step 2: definition of confinement typologies</i>	- lateral confinement	- <i>Confinement typologies:</i> confined (C) partly confined (PC) unconfined (U)
<i>Step 3: identification of morphological typologies</i>	- planimetric characteristics (sinuosity, braiding, and anabranching indices)	- <i>Morphological typologies:</i> <i>Confined:</i> single thread, wandering, braided, anabranching <i>partly confined - unconfined:</i> straight, sinuous, meandering, wandering, braided, anabranching
<i>Step 4: other elements for reach delineation</i>	- further discontinuities in hydrology, bed slope, characteristic geomorphic units, bed sediment calibre, channel width, floodplain width	- <i>Reaches</i>

According to the original version of the MQI (Rinaldi et al., 2012, 2013), four steps can be used during the delineation procedure (Table 1.1), including some slight modification from the original version to ensure full consistency with the REFORM delineation framework. The four steps are summarised in Table 1.1 and in the following sub-sections.

### 1.3.1 Step 1: Physiographic setting

**Aim:** derive a general setting of the physiographic context and identify macro-areas (landscape or physiographic units) and macro-reaches (segments) with similar morphological characteristics.

**Information/data necessary:** watershed area, dominant lithologies, climate and hydrologic regime, land use, river longitudinal profiles.

**Methods:** geological, geomorphological, and land use maps; existing studies; hydrological data collection and analysis; Remote sensing /GIS; field reconnaissance.

**Results:** division of the catchment into landscape units and of the rivers into segments. The latter are macro-reaches defined by the intersection of the channel network with landscape units, and by additional factors (e.g., major changes of valley setting, major tributary confluences).

**Description:** based on existing material, the main **landscape units** in the catchment are identified (Figures 1.1 and 1.2). They can be included in the following main **physiographic settings**: (1) *mountains*; (2) *hills*; (3) *plains*. Intermediate cases (e.g., hilly mountain areas) can be also defined.

The portions of streams included within a landscape unit are defined as **segments**. Within a single landscape unit, the river may be further divided into more segments depending on additional factors, including major changes of valley setting (confined, partly-confined, unconfined, as well as continuity of alluvial deposits) and gradient, major tributary confluences (a significant increase in upstream catchment area and river discharge). Segments normally have a length of the order of several km (mountain areas) and up to tens of km (lowland areas).

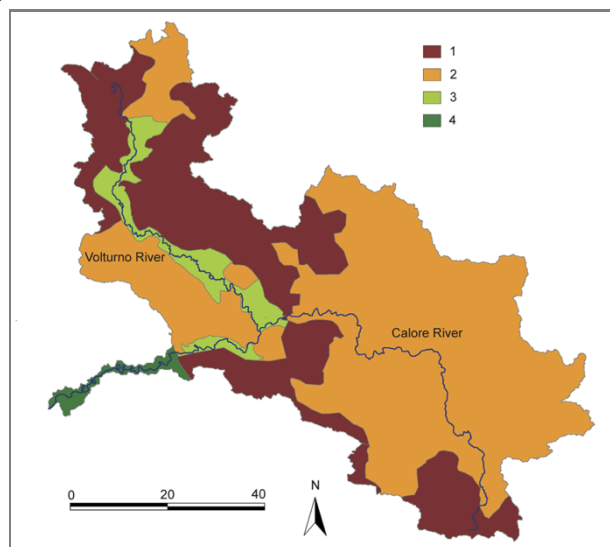


Figure 1.1 Delineation of the catchment of the Voltorno River (Italy) into landscape units. (1) Mountainous unit; (2) Hilly unit; (3) Intermontane plain unit; (4) Low plain unit.



Figure 1.2 Panoramic views of the landscape units in the Voltorno River catchment. (1) Mountainous unit; (2) Hilly unit; (3) Intermontane unit; (4) Low plain unit.

### 1.3.2 Step 2: Confinement

**Aim:** define river confinement in more detail, and sub-divide segments based on confinement.

**Information/data necessary:** width of the entire floodplain, confinement degree, confinement index.

**Methods:** Remote sensing /GIS; topographic and geological maps.

**Results:** division of segments based on confinement.

**Description:** to analyze the confinement in detail, two parameters are used: (1) confinement degree; (2) confinement index.

- (1) **Confinement degree.** This evaluates the lateral confinement in the longitudinal valley direction. It corresponds to the percentage of river banks not directly in contact with the plain but with hillslopes or *ancient terraces*, over the total length of the two banks (Brierley and Fryirs, 2005). The *plain* is here identified as the entire *floodplain*, generally constituted by alluvial sediments (also indicated as *alluvial plain*), and is normally identified on geological maps with “present alluvium” or “Holocene alluvium”, while *ancient terraces* are older. *Recent terraces* generated by historical bed incision (e.g., during the last 100÷200 years, as very frequently occur in many European countries) are not considered as *ancient terraces* and for the purpose of the confinement are part of the entire *floodplain*. In addition to a chronological criterion, further factors for defining the confinement can be the difference of elevation and the erodibility of the material. For example, a Holocene terrace of 10÷15 m is not part of the floodplain. However, a Pleistocene terrace separated by a difference in level of a few meters can be considered as part of the floodplain, except when the material is strongly cemented. Finally, the floodplain is not always comprised of alluvial sediments. In Northern Europe, some plains have been generated by *fluvio-glacial* or *fluvio-lacustrine* processes, and are characterised by a large sediment size variability, ranging from very fine (lacustrine deposits) to coarse (glacial or fluvio-glacial deposits). In these cases, the floodplain is intended in a broader sense as a surface that does not confine river dynamics (in terms of flooding and/or lateral erosion), and the altimetric and erodibility criteria should be used (i.e., the difference in elevation with the channel bed should be limited to a few meters, and the material should not be strongly consolidated or cemented).

Once the elements of confinement (hillslopes and ancient terraces) have been delimited, three cases can be distinguished based on the *confinement degree* (Brierley and Fryirs, 2005; Rinaldi et al., 2013; Gurnell et al., 2014):

- **Confined channels:** more than 90% of the banks are directly in contact with hillslopes or ancient terraces. The floodplain is limited to some isolated pockets ( $\leq 10\%$ ).
- **Partly confined channels:** banks are in contact with the floodplain for a length from 10 to 90%.
- **Unconfined channels:** less than 10% of the bank length is in contact with hillslopes or ancient terraces. In fact, the floodplain is nearly continuous, and the river has no lateral constraints to its mobility.

In some cases, the confinement degree previously defined is not sufficient to appropriately define the confinement characteristics. In fact, it is not infrequent

(particularly in mountain areas) to have streams with a very narrow (some meters) but quite continuous floodplain on the sides of the river making contact with the hillslopes. According to the previous definitions, such streams may fall into the categories of partly confined or unconfined, while for the purposes of this method it would be more appropriate to consider them as confined. Therefore, an additional parameter is used here which takes into account the width of the floodplain, and is defined as follows.

(2) **Confinement index.** It is defined here as the ratio between the floodplain width (including the channel) and the channel width. Consequently, the index is inversely proportional to the confinement: a minimum value of 1 indicates that the floodplain and channel coincide (i.e. there is no floodplain), while the index increases when the floodplain increases its width relatively to the channel width. Based on the confinement index, the following classes are identified:

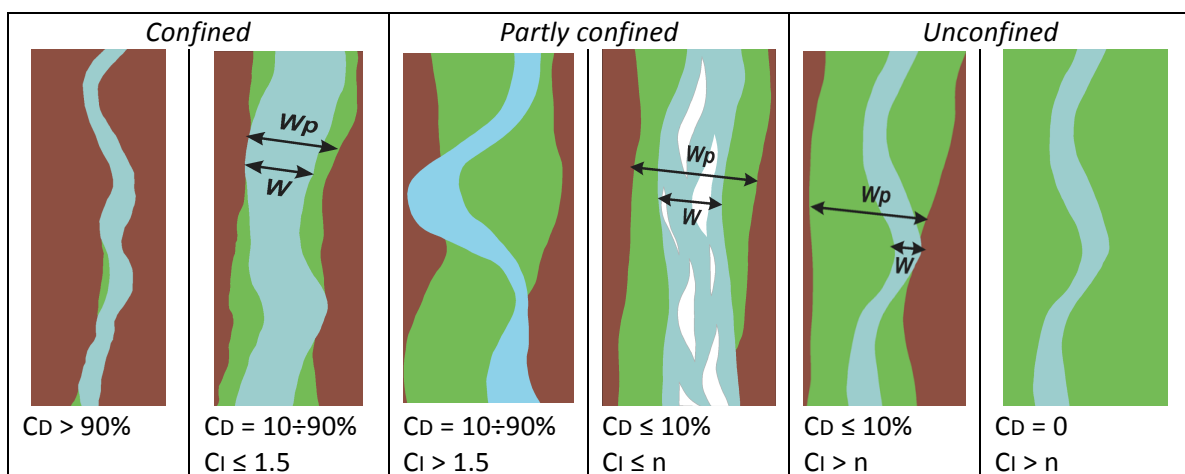
- *high confinement*: index ranging from 1 to 1.5;
- *medium confinement*: index ranging from 1.5 to  $n$ ;
- *low confinement*: index higher than  $n$ ;

where  $n = 5$  for single-thread channels, and  $n = 2$  for multi-thread or transitional (wandering) morphologies. The higher value for single-thread channels reflects the fact that a sufficiently wide floodplain is needed for these channels to develop completely free meanders, equal to about 4.5 times the channel width (Leopold and Wolman, 1957).

Based on the confinement degree and confinement index, the three final classes of confinement are defined, according to Table 1.2 (Figures 1.3 and 1.4).

**Table 1.2 Definition of final confinement classes by combining confinement degree and confinement index.**  
(from Rinaldi et al., 2012)

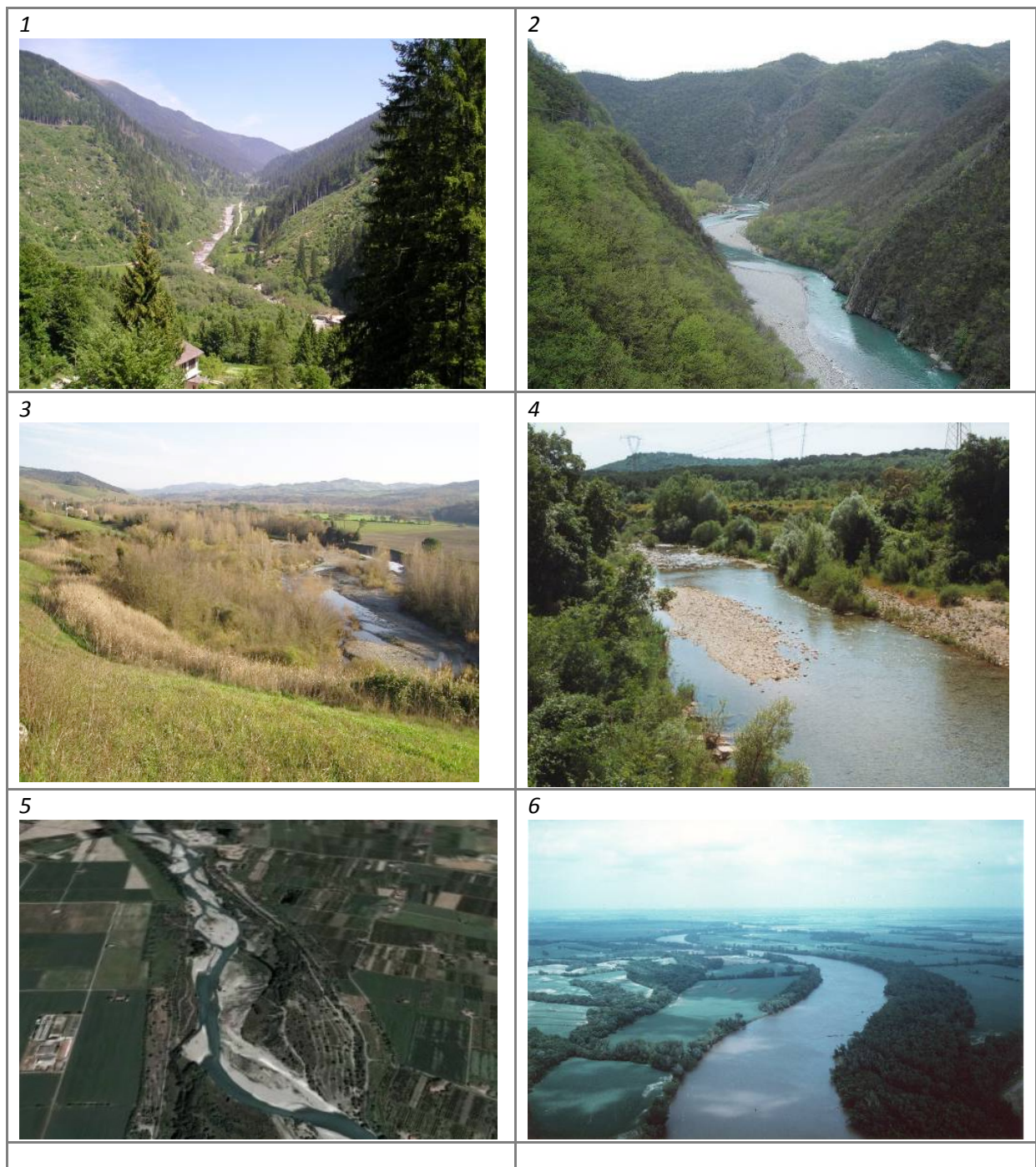
Confinement class	Description
<b>Confined</b>	All cases with confinement degree > 90%
	Confinement degree from 10% to 90% and confinement index $\leq 1.5$
<b>Partly confined</b>	Confinement degree from 10% to 90% and confinement index > 1.5
	Confinement degree $\leq 10\%$ and confinement index $\leq n$
<b>Unconfined</b>	Confinement degree $\leq 10\%$ and confinement index > $n$



**Figure 1.3 Confinement classes.**

In green: floodplain; in brown: hillslopes (or ancient terraces). Cd: confinement degree; Ci: confinement index =  $W_p/W$ , where  $W_p$ : floodplain width (including the channel) and  $W$ : channel width.





**Figure 1.4 Examples of different confinement classes.**  
**(1), (2) Confined channels; (3), (4) partly confined channels; (5), (6) unconfined channels.**

### 1.3.3 Step 3: Channel morphology

**Aim:** define and classify channel morphology.

**Information/data necessary:** confinement, sinuosity index, braiding index, anastomosing index (bed configuration).

**Methods:** Remote sensing /GIS; field reconnaissance.

**Results:** division of segments based on channel morphology.

**Description:** the first level of morphological classification used for the delineation of river reaches is based on river channel planform character (number of threads and planform pattern) in the context of valley setting (confinement). This **Basic River Typology (BRT)** (Rinaldi et al., 2011, 2015, 2016; Gurnell et al., 2014) defines seven river types using readily-available information, mainly by remotely-sensed imagery (Figure 1.5). Different types are associated with two broad categories of valley confinement.

*Confined channels* are first divided into two broad categories (single-thread, multi-thread or wandering). For single-thread, sinuosity is not meaningful as it is determined by the valley rather than the channel planform. These channels are not further classified at this stage, because it is not possible to make accurate distinctions based on other characteristics (e.g., bed configuration) from remotely sensed sources. Transitional and multi-thread confined reaches are identified using the same criteria as for unconfined and partly-confined channels (see below). In conclusion, only four *BRT* of confined channels are discriminated (Figure 1.6): single-thread (straight-sinuuous), wandering, braided, anabranching.

*Partly confined and unconfined channels* are classified based on their planimetric characteristics using the following indices: (1) *sinuosity index*; (2) *braiding index*; (3) *anabranching index*.

- **SINUOSITY INDEX ( $Si$ )** is defined as the ratio between the distance measured along the (main) channel and the distance measured following the direction of the overall planimetric course (or 'meander belt axis' for single thread rivers).
- **BRAIDING INDEX ( $Bi$ )** is defined as the number of active channels at baseflow separated by bars.
- **ANABRANCHING INDEX ( $Ai$ )** is defined as the number of active channels at baseflow separated by vegetated islands.

Based on these parameters, the following six Basic River Types of partly confined and unconfined channels are defined (Table 1.3, Figure 1.7):

- *Single-thread channels*: straight, sinuous, meandering
- *Transitional channels*: wandering
- *Multi-thread channels*: braided, anabranching.

Further morphologies, described by the Extended River Typology (*ERT*: see Gurnell et al., 2014; Rinaldi et al., 2015, 2016), are identified during Step 4 and/or during the characterization and assessment stages.

Table 1.3 Criteria and threshold values of indices or other distinctive characteristics for the morphological classification of partly confined and unconfined channels. n.a.: not applied.

(modified from Rinaldi et al., 2012, 2013, and from Gurnell et al., 2014)

<i>Typology</i>	<b>Sinuosity index (Si)</b>	<b>Braiding index (Bi)</b>	<b>Anabranching index (Ai)</b>
<b><i>Straight (ST)</i></b>	$1 \leq Si < 1.05$	$1 \div 1.5$ (normally approx. 1)	$1 \div 1.5$ (normally approx. 1)
<b><i>Sinuuous (S)</i></b>	$1.05 \leq Si < 1.5$	$1 \div 1.5$ (normally approx. 1)	$1 \div 1.5$ (normally approx. 1)
<b><i>Meandering (M)</i></b>	$\geq 1.5$	$1 \div 1.5$ (normally approx. 1)	$1 \div 1.5$ (normally approx. 1)
<b><i>Wandering (W)</i></b>	n.a.	$1 \leq Bi < 1.5$	$1 \leq Ai < 1.5$
<b><i>Braided (B)</i></b>	n.a.	$\geq 1.5$	$< 1.5$
<b><i>Anabranching (A)</i></b>	n.a.	$1 \div 1.5$	$\geq 1.5$

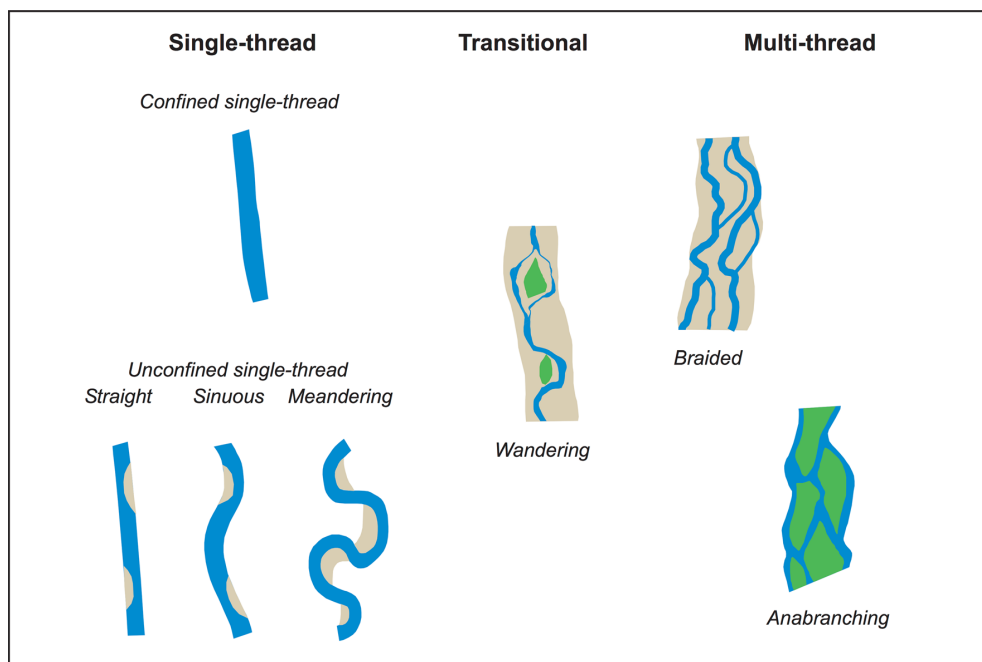
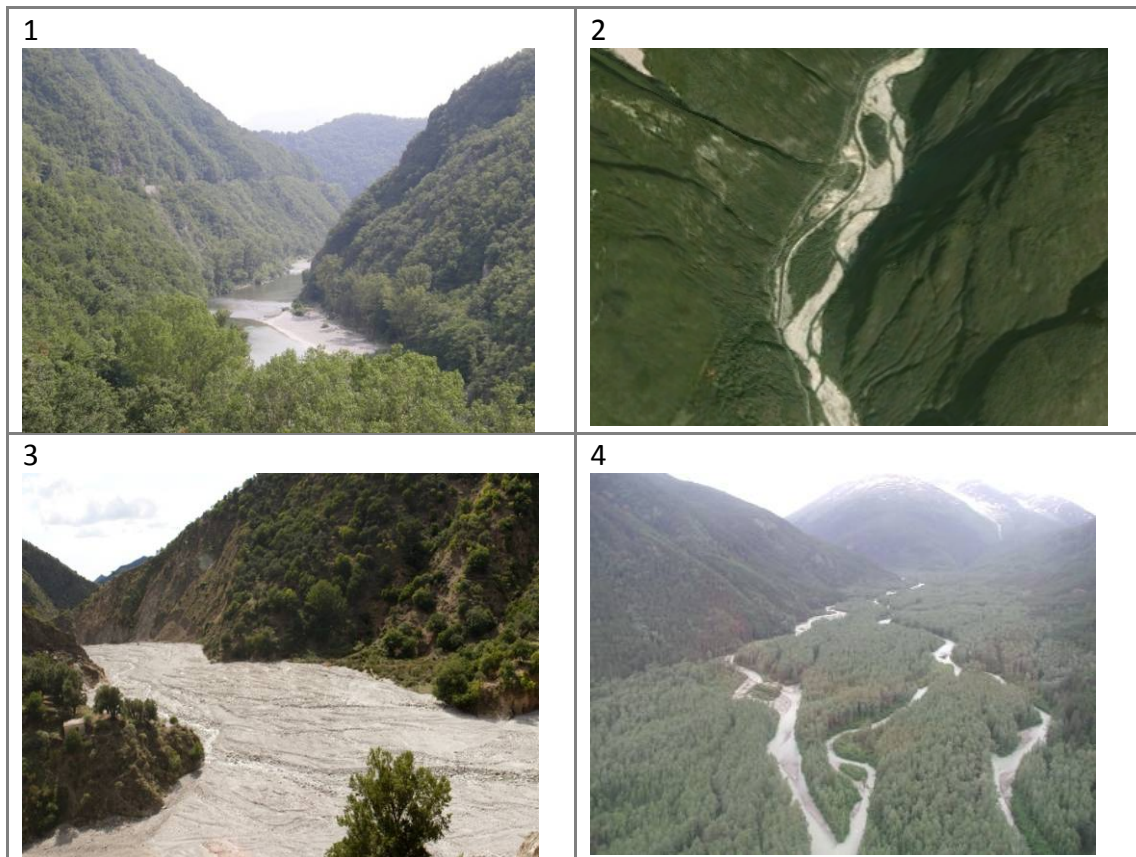


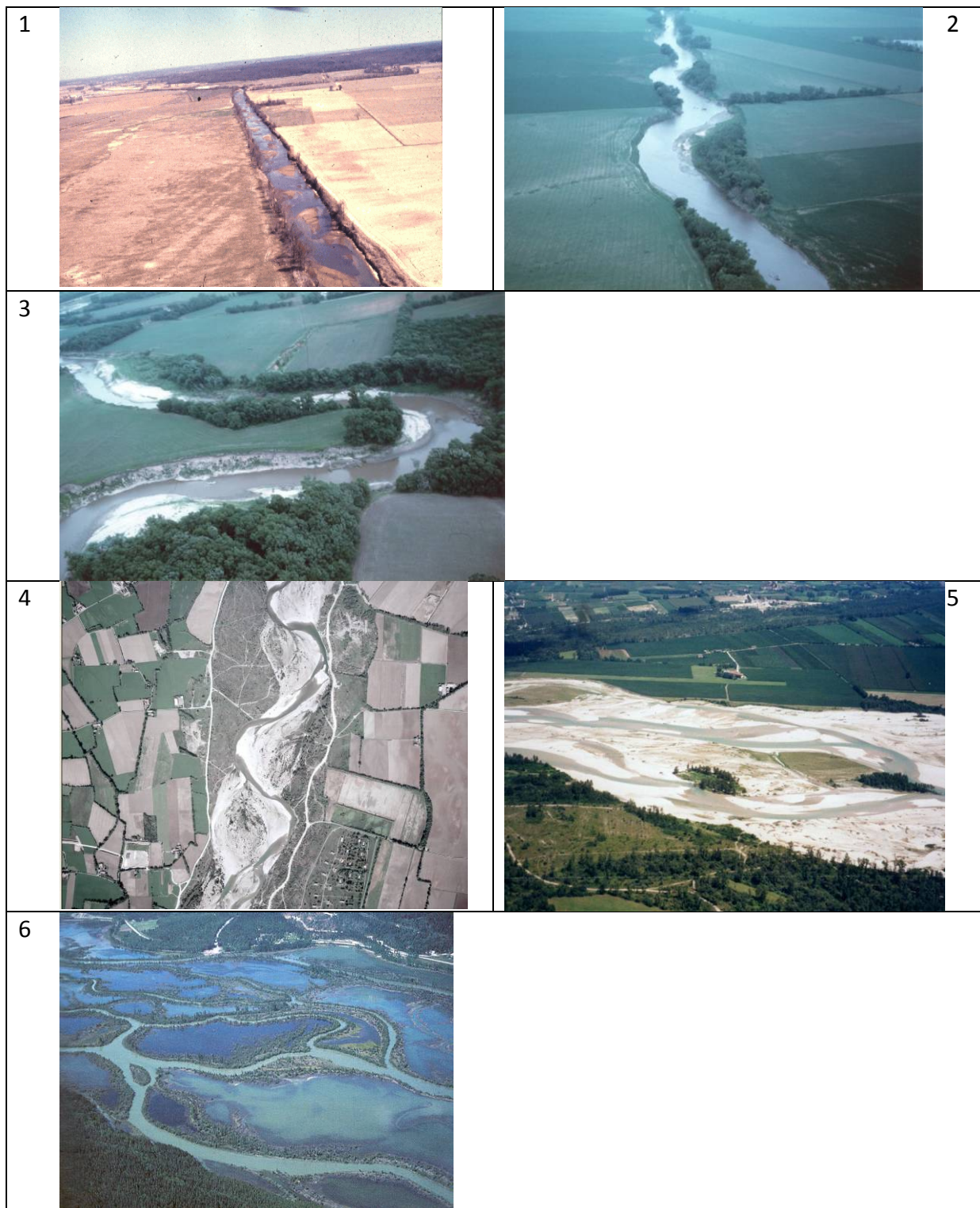
Figure 1.5 The seven river types of the Basic River Typology (BRT) used for the delineation phase.



**Figure 1.6 Morphologies of confined channels.**

**(1) Confined single-thread; (2) confined wandering; (3) confined braided; (4) confined anabranching.**





**Figure 1.7** Examples of morphologies of partly confined and unconfined channels.

(1) Straight; (2) sinuous; (3) meandering; (4) wandering; (5) braided; (6) anabranching (in the photo, the islands and floodplain are inundated).

#### 1.3.4 Step 4: Other elements for reach delineation

**Aim:** finalize the delineation of reaches accounting for additional factors.

**Information/data necessary:** hydrologic discontinuities (tributaries, dams), longitudinal profile, artificiality, width of floodplain, channel width.

**Methods:** Remote sensing/GIS; longitudinal profile by topographic maps; field reconnaissance.

**Results:** segments are divided into reaches, representing the basic spatial unit for the application of the MQI.

**Description:** the following additional aspects are considered in this step as criteria for a further division into reaches (Figure 1.8).

- **Change in geomorphic units.** Within a reach with a same Basic River Type (according to step 3), a distinct change in the typical assemblage of geomorphic units can be noted and used as an additional criterion for sub-dividing the reach. Changes in geomorphic units and/or in sediment size are reflected in a change of river type, according to the Extended River Typology (*ERT*: see next section). For example, a sinuous reach may be characterised by a first portion with continuous, alternate bars (type 12 of the *ERT*) and a second part with only occasional bars (type 13 of the *ERT*): in this case, two distinct sinuous reaches can be distinguished characterised by a different pattern of bars.
- **Discontinuities in bed slope.** This is particularly important in the case of confined channels where important and abrupt changes in bed slope can be noted from the longitudinal profile.
- **Tributaries.** Tributaries determining significant changes in flow discharge or sediment transport can be considered in this step.
- **Dams and other artificial elements.** Artificial discontinuities are mainly identified with *dams*, which are always assumed as a limit between reaches. Similarly, *check dams* or diversion structures of relevant sizes are normally considered as a limit of the reach. Furthermore, heavily artificial streams (*type 0* of the *ERT*) are also considered in this step, such as a stream reach crossing an urban area, or a mountain stream with bed revetments and/or a sequence of consolidation check dams.
- **Change in confinement and/or size of the floodplain:** in some cases, this can be considered as an additional criterion.
- **Changes in sediment size:** cases of a considerable and sudden change in sediment size, e.g. a passage from gravel-bed to sand-bed, can be considered a criterion of separation in different reaches. This can be reflected in a change of river type, according to the Extended River Typology. For example, a sinuous reach may be characterised by a first portion with a gravel bed (type 13 of the *ERT*), and a second part with a sand-bed (type 17 of the *ERT*): in this case, two distinct sinuous reaches can be distinguished.

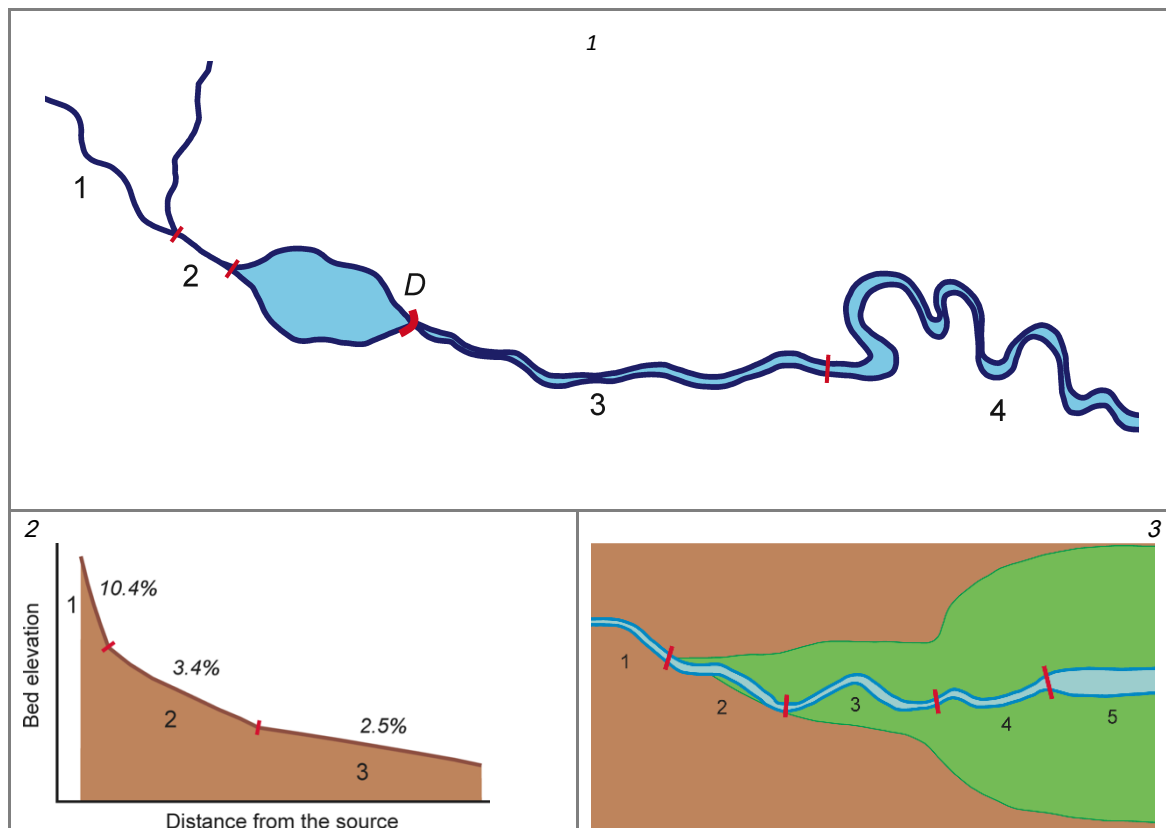


Figure 1.8 Examples of discontinuities considered during the final step of segmentation.

(1) Hydrological discontinuity due to a major tributary (reaches 1 and 2); dam (D) (reaches 2 and 3: note that the reservoir is not considered as a river reach). (2) Discontinuity in bed slope (confined reaches). (3) Other discontinuities that can be used for river segmentation: change in size of the floodplain (from 3 to 4); change in channel width (from 4 to 5).

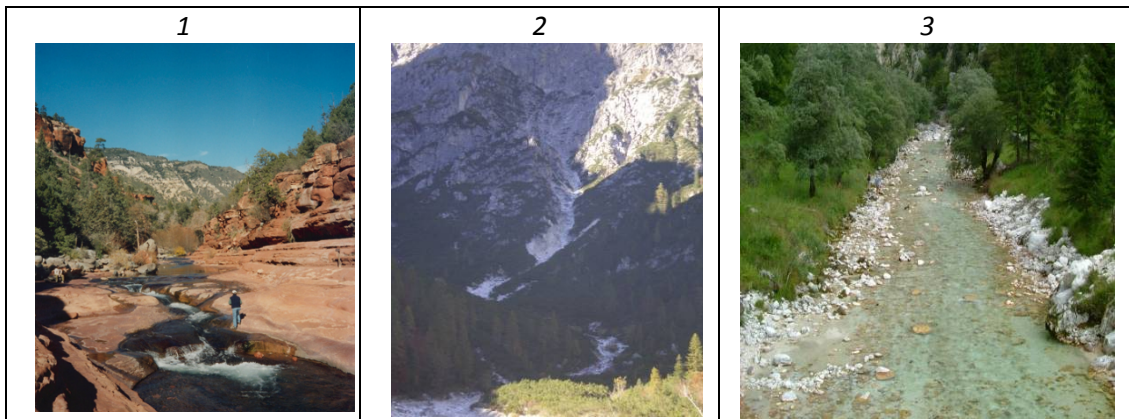
#### 1.4 Further characterization

Following the initial delineation of river reaches, the multi-scale hierarchical framework includes a characterization phase, during which additional information on reach properties and indicators is collected. This information is collected, partly, during the field survey, and therefore is not required for the segmentation. In some cases the segmentation can be amended if field observations lead to the identification of some additional elements that were not observed by remote sensing (for example, a significant change in sediment size).

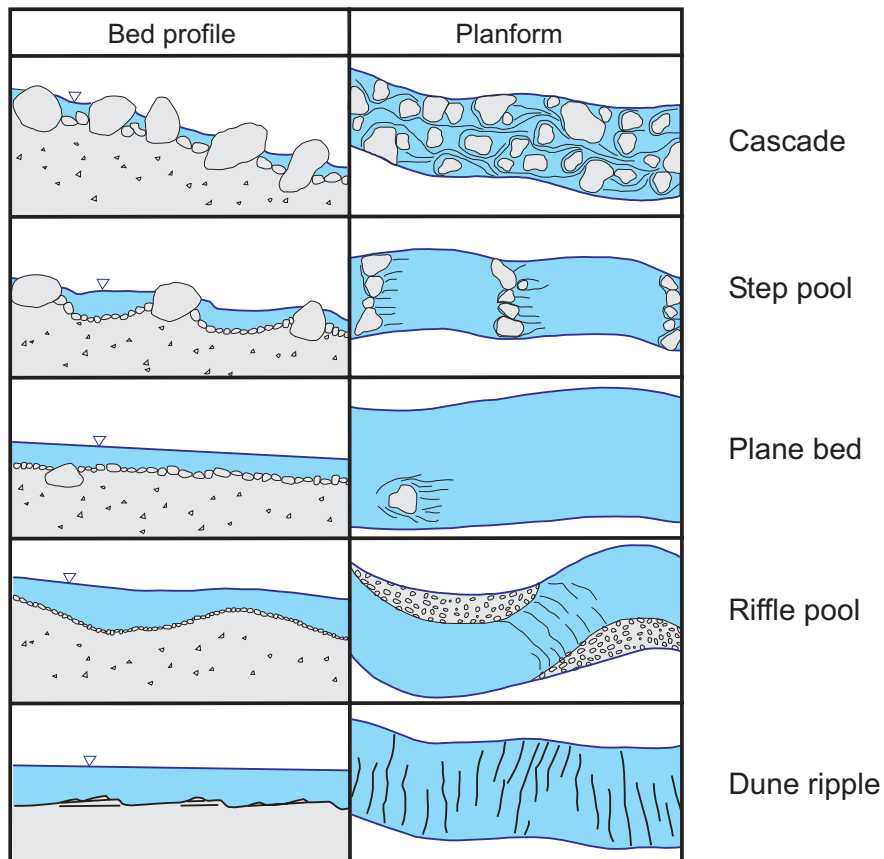
The first set of information concerns the following features: (i) **drainage area**; (ii) **dominant bed sediment**; (iii) **mean bed slope**; (iv) **mean channel width**; (v) **bed configuration**. This information supports the definition of the Extended River Type and energy setting (see next sections). Additional data/information concerning sediment size and discharge, when available, can be also included.

Concerning **bed configuration**, the following bed morphologies are distinguished (Montgomery and Buffington, 1997; Gurnell et al., 2014) (Figures 1.9, 1.10, 1.11; Table 1.4):

- *Bedrock channels*;
- *Colluvial channels*;
- *Alluvial channels*: cascade, step pool, plane bed, riffle pool, dune ripple;
- *Artificial bed*.



**Figure 1.9 Initial distinction of bed configuration at reach scale.**  
**(1) Bedrock channel; (2) colluvial channel; (3) alluvial channel.**



**Figure 1.10 Classification of bed configuration at reach-scale in single-thread, alluvial channels.**  
**(modified from Montgomery & Buffington, 1997)**

**Table 1.4 Characteristic geomorphic units defining the bed configuration of alluvial channels at reach scale.**

REACH SCALE	GEOMORPHIC UNITS
CASCADE	CASCADES
STEP POOL	STEPS, POOLS
PLANE BED	RAPIDS, GLIDES
RIFFLE POOL	RIFFLES, POOLS, GLIDES
DUNE RIPPLES	DUNE, RIPPLES



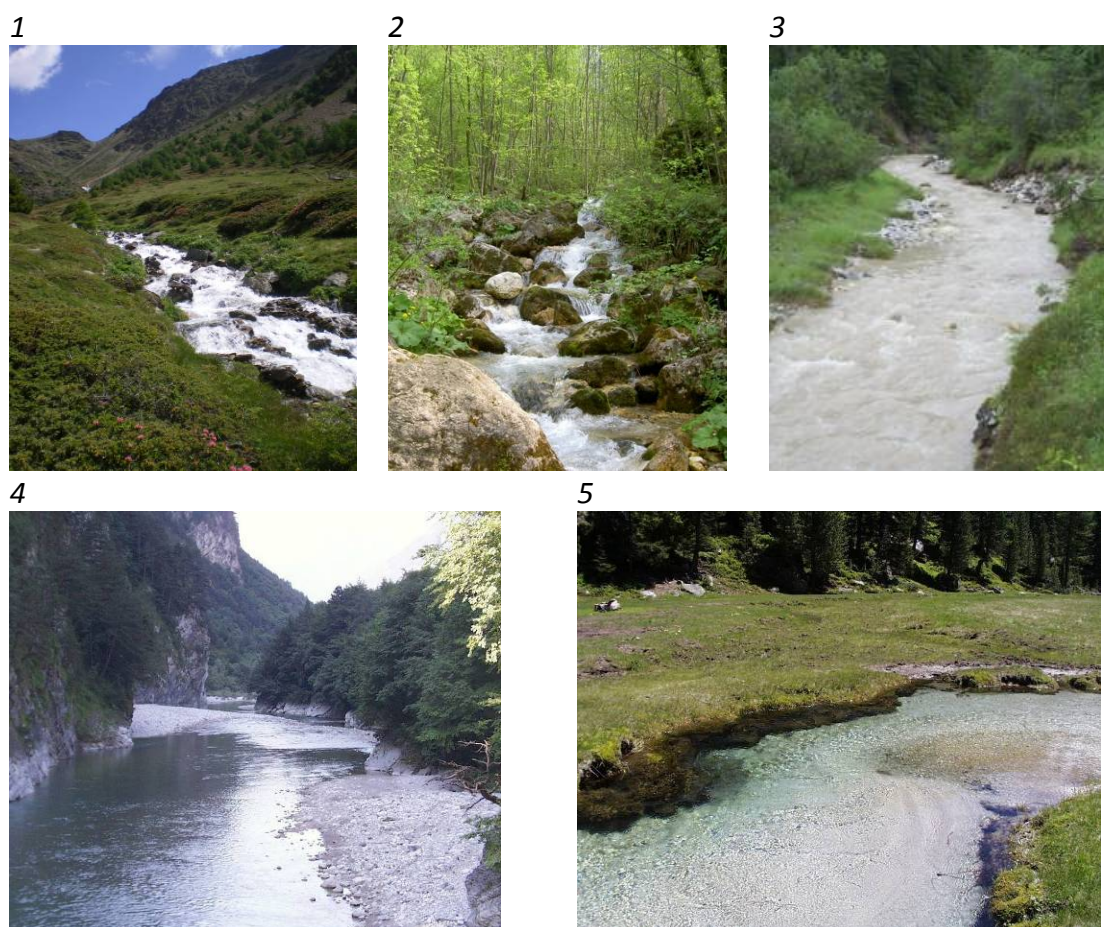


Figure 1.11 Reach-scale morphologies in single-thread, alluvial channels. (1) Cascade; (2) step pool; (3) plane bed; (4) riffle pool; (5) dune ripple.

#### 1.4.1 The Extended River Typology (ERT)

Based on this additional knowledge, the **Extended River Typology (ERT)** (Gurnell et al., 2014; Rinaldi et al., 2015, 2016) is applied. This more detailed characterization of the river type of the assessed reach is important, given that many **MQI indicators** are **type-dependent**, i.e. the range of application of each MQI indicator is mainly based on the Extended River Type. The ERT classification is also useful to better place the reach in the context of the catchment and of the controlling physical conditions (e.g., valley slope, flow energy, sediment supply, etc.), specifically to support the assessment of impacted reaches where channel morphology may be out of context (see later).

Although the *ERT* is informed by previous geomorphological research, it was designed for practical application by stakeholders and river managers (Rinaldi et al., 2016), and it builds explicitly on the simple *BRT* classification described in the previous section.

**Twenty-two Extended River Types** are discriminated (Table 1.5, Figures 1.12 and 1.13) according to their confinement (confined, partly confined, unconfined), dominant bed material size (bedrock, boulder, cobble, gravel, sand, silt), and planform (straight-sinuuous, meandering, pseudo-meandering, wandering, braided, island-braided, anabranching). The following aspects should be taken into account:

- (i) The Extended River Types are not intended to be 'reference conditions' (for the definition of reference conditions see section 1.5). It is important to note that reference

conditions are not defined in terms of a precise channel configuration or a set of channel characteristics but they are rather defined in terms of dynamic processes and functions that are expected to normally occur in a given physical context. The type of reasoning such as 'reach morphology is type 13 but should be type 8' has to be avoided, because a reliable prediction of which should be the 'natural' morphology in the absence of human pressures is not feasible and is out of the scopes of the MQI.

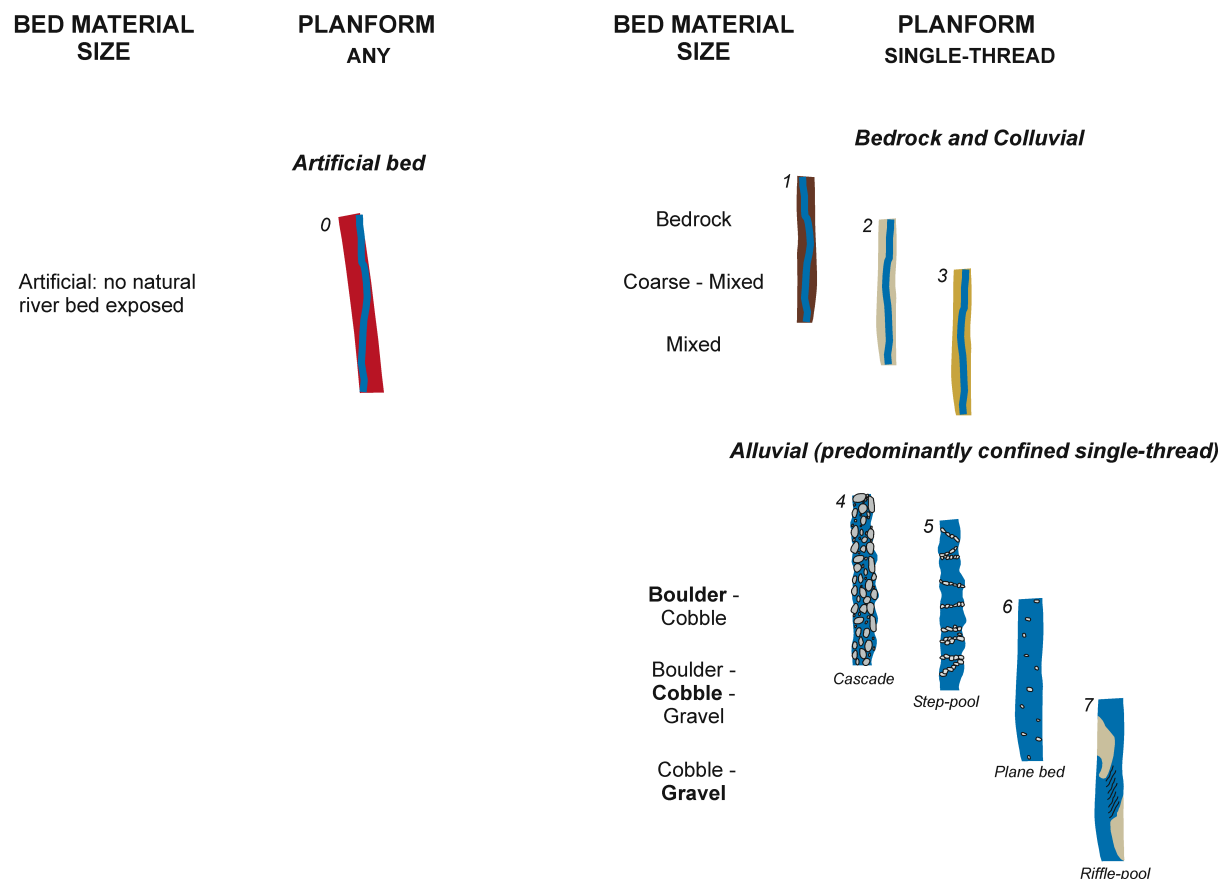
(ii) The extended types are intended as 'naturally-functioning' morphologies to the degree that they have some ability to adjust their plan- and bed-form. Therefore type 0 (highly altered reaches) is retained in the extended typology for any reach with a predominantly artificial bed and/or heavily engineered, stabilised banks.

(iii) Straight and sinuous types are combined in the *ERT* (Table 1.5), because both types are related to similar morphological units. However, to avoid inconsistency between the classifications, the combination of, for example, a 'straight' channel (*BRT*) with a 'straight-sinuous with alternate bars' (*ERT*) should lead to a 'straight with alternate bars' extended type.

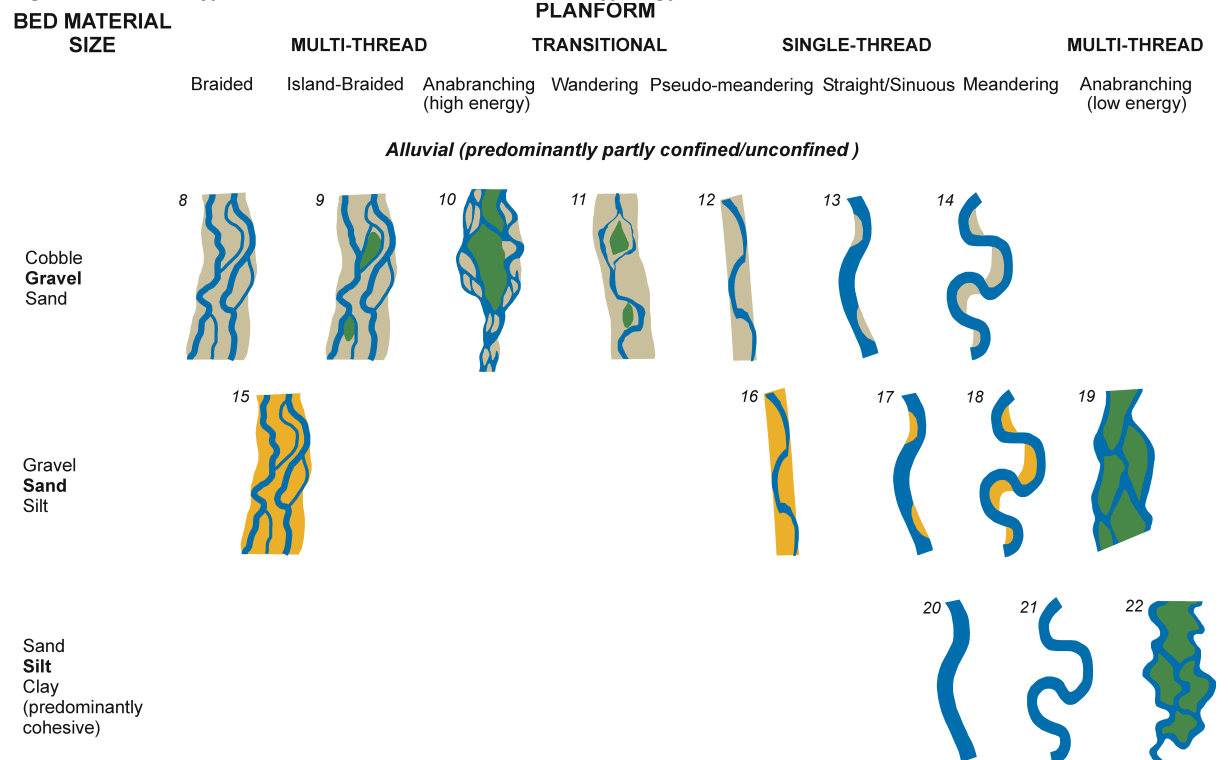
(iv) A new transitional type, 'pseudo-meandering', is incorporated to describe straight or sinuous channels that display large, alternate bars at low flow. While the bankfull channel conforms to a straight or sinuous channel, the low flow channel is so heavily affected by the exposure of alternate bars that it would be defined as meandering if its *Si* index were to be calculated.

**Table 1.5 Main characteristics of the 7 Basic River Types and 22 morphological types of the Extended River Typology.** (from Rinaldi et al., 2016). ERT: Extended River Type; BRT: corresponding Basic River Type; C: Confined; PC: Partly confined; U: Unconfined. In bold: dominant bed material type/size.

<b>ERT (BRT)</b>	<b>Predominant confinement class</b>	<b>Bed material size</b>	<b>Planform</b>	<b>Typical slope (m m<sup>-1</sup>)</b>
<i>Heavily Artificial</i>				
0 (0)	C, PC, U	Artificial	Any	Any
<i>Bedrock and Colluvial Channels</i>				
1 (1)	C	Bedrock	Straight-Sinuuous	Usually steep
2 (1)	C	Coarse mixed	Straight-Sinuuous	Steep
3 (1)	C	Mixed	Straight-Sinuuous	Lower than ERTs 1 and 2
<i>Alluvial Channels</i>				
4 (1)	C	Boulder	Straight-Sinuuous	>>0.04
5 (1)	C	Boulder, Cobble	Straight-Sinuuous	>0.04
6 (1)	C	Boulder, Cobble, Gravel	Straight-Sinuuous	>0.02
7 (1)	C	Cobble, Gravel	Straight-Sinuuous	>0.01
8 (6)	C, PC, U	Gravel, Sand	Braided	<0.04
9 (6)	C, PC, U	Gravel, Sand	Island-Braided	<0.04
10 (7)	C, PC, U	Gravel, Sand	Anabranching (high energy)	<0.01
11 (5)	C, PC, U	Gravel, Sand	Wandering	<0.04
12 (3)	C, PC, U	Gravel, Sand	Pseudo-meandering	<0.04
13 (2/3)	PC, U	Gravel, Sand	Straight-Sinuuous	<0.02
14 (4)	PC, U	Gravel, Sand	Meandering	<0.02
15 (6)	C, PC, U	Fine Gravel, Sand	Braided	<0.02
16 (3)	C, PC, U	Fine Gravel, Sand	Pseudo-meandering	<0.02
17 (1/2)	PC, U	Fine Gravel, Sand	Straight-Sinuuous	<0.02
18 (4)	PC, U	Fine gravel, Sand	Meandering	<0.02
19 (7)	C, PC, U	Fine Gravel, Sand	Anabranching	<0.005
20 (2/3)	PC, U	Fine Sand, Silt, Clay	Straight-Sinuuous	<0.005
21 (4)	C, PC, U	Fine Sand, Silt, Clay	Meandering	<0.005
22 (7)	C, PC, U	Fine Sand, Silt, Clay	Anabranching	<0.005



**Figure 1.12 River types from 0 to 7 of the Extended River Typology.**



**Figure 1.13 River types from 8 to 22 of the Extended River Typology.**

The river types are arranged in Figures 1.12 and 1.13 to provide indirect information on the typical **spatial distribution of channel morphologies** in a fluvial system, as they are linked to confinement, sediment particle size (decreasing from top to bottom of the Figures), and to bedload transport and river energy (from left to right along each line in the Figures). Figure 1.12 illustrates typical confined channel morphologies located in the upper portion of a catchment, whereas in Figure 1.13 the typical downstream distribution of channel morphologies tends to move from top left to bottom right. However, deviations from this principle are possible depending on the specific conditions of the catchment (e.g., due to the alternation of lower energy, alluvial reaches and higher energy, confined reaches, or to other factors).

The 22 extended types are **not** an **exhaustive** list of possible combinations of planform, valley setting, sediment size, and geomorphic units, but rather an indicative, general framework for identifying catchment- or region-specific ranges of morphologies. This is because river characteristics cannot be neatly divided into classes, they vary continuously and thus transitional types are likely to be encountered quite frequently (Kondolf et al., 2003). Furthermore, the set of distinguishing morphological attributes may vary between biogeographical regions and may be degraded or reduced by human interventions, but a check-list of the units that may be present within the channel and its floodplain is provided in Table 1.6 as a starting point.

**Table 1.6 Description of the 22 morphological types of the Extended River Types (ERT).**

(from Rinaldi et al., 2016). Geomorphic units: AB: Alternate bar; AC: Abandoned channel; B: Bar; Be: Bench; BL: Boulder levées; Bs: Backswamp; C: Cascade; CC: Crevasse channel; Ch: Chutes; Co: Cut-off channel; CS: Crevasse splay; F: Forced; G: Glide; I: Island; L: Levées; LB: Lateral bar; MB: Marginal bar; MCB: Mid-channel bar; P: Pool; PB: Point bar; PBe: Point bench; Po: Pond; R: Riffle; Ra: Rapids; RD: Ripples (and Dunes); RS: Rock step; RSw: Ridge and Swale; SB: Scroll bar; Sc: Scroll; SP: Step-Pool; SS: Sand splay; VI: Vegetation induced.

<b>ERT</b>	<b>Geomorphic Units</b>	<b>Stability</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>0</b>	Possible occasional B	Very Stable	Highly modified reaches
<b>1</b>	RS, C, Ra	Usually strongly confined and highly stable	Sediment supply-limited channels with no continuous alluvial bed
<b>2</b>	BL, C, SS, AC	Can be highly unstable	Small, steep channels at the extremities of the stream network
<b>3</b>	Poorly defined, featureless channels.	Very stable, shallow (often ephemeral) channels	Small, relatively low gradient channels at the extremities of the stream network
<b>4</b>	C, P	Stable for long periods but occasional catastrophic destabilisation	Very steep with coarse bed material consisting mainly of boulders and local exposures of bedrock
<b>5</b>	SP	Stable for long periods but occasional catastrophic destabilisation	Sequence of channel spanning accumulations of boulders and cobbles (steps) separated by pools
<b>6</b>	G, Ra, FB, FP	Relatively stable for long periods, but floods can induce lateral instability and avulsions	Predominantly single thread but secondary channels are sometimes present

<b>7</b>	R, P, G, LB	Subject to frequent shifting of bars	Coarse cobble-gravel sediments sorted to reflect the flow pattern and bed morphology
<b>8</b>	MCB, R, P	Usually highly unstable both laterally and vertically	Multiple channels separated by active bars (bar-braided)
<b>9</b>	I, MCB, R, P	Usually unstable both laterally and vertically	Distinguished from type 11 by > 20% channel area covered by islands of established vegetation
<b>10</b>	I, R, P	Lateral instability usually present	Islands covered by mature vegetation extend between channels
<b>11</b>	I, MCB, MB, R, P	Usually highly unstable both laterally and vertically	Exhibit switching from single to multi-thread
<b>12</b>	Large, continuous AB, R, P	Usually unstable both laterally and vertically	Differs from type 11 in its lower sinuosity and very pronounced alternating lateral bar development
<b>13</b>	Large alternate (continuous) PB, R, P	Subject to frequent shifting of bars	Sinuuous pattern with discontinuous bars of coarse sediment
<b>14</b>	R, P, PB, Ch, Co, SB, Pbe	Laterally unstable channels subject to lateral migration	Meandering pattern with frequent point bars of coarse sediment
<b>15</b>	B, RD	Unstable both laterally and vertically	Same morphology as type 8 but with predominantly sand material
<b>16</b>	Continuous, large AB, P, RD	Vertically unstable due to bar movement and sometimes laterally migrating	Highly sinuous baseflow and alternating bars within a straight to sinuous channel
<b>17</b>	R, P, PB, RD, occasional Be, SB, L, Bs	Laterally unstable channels subject to lateral migration	Same morphology as type 13 but with predominantly sand material
<b>18</b>	P, PB, RD, S, L, RSw, Bs, AC	Unstable channels subject to meander loop progression and extension with cut-offs	Same morphology as 14 but with predominantly sand material
<b>19</b>	I, RD, L, VIB, VIBe, RD, AC	Stable	Vegetation stabilising bars between channel threads, forming islands that develop by vertical accretion of fine sediment
<b>20</b>	L, Bs	Very stable	Silt to silt-clay banks often with high organic content are highly cohesive
<b>21</b>	L, Bs, Pbe	Very stable	Similar to 20 but with higher sinuosity
<b>22</b>	I, L, CC, CS, Po, VIB, VIBe, AC, Bs	Very stable	Silt to silt-clay banks often with high organic content are highly cohesive; extensive islands covered by wetland vegetation

### 1.4.2 Low-energy alluvial reaches

Based on the additional knowledge (sediment size, bed slope, etc.) and the further characterization obtained through the *ERT*, at this stage it is useful to discriminate **Low-Energy streams (LE)** from other medium-high energy streams. This distinction is useful to better define the **range of application of some indicators** during the application of the MQI. In fact, some indicators are exclusive to low-energy streams, whereas other indicators do not apply to these streams.

The definition of low-energy streams is based on the **following features**:

(i) The most suitable parameter to discriminate between low energy and medium-high energy is the **unit stream power**,  $\omega$  ( $\text{W m}^{-2}$ ), defined as  $\omega = \Omega/W$ , where  $\Omega = \gamma QS$  is the total (cross-sectional) stream power,  $\gamma$  is the unit weight of water ( $= 9800 \text{ Nm}^{-3}$ ),  $Q$  is the discharge (at formative flows, i.e.  $Q_{1.5}$  or  $Q_2$ ) ( $\text{m}^3/\text{s}$ ),  $S$  is the bed slope ( $\text{m m}^{-1}$ ). Typical low-energy conditions are generally identified with **unit stream power**  $< 10 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  (Nanson & Croke, 1992).

(ii) If the discharge at formative flows is not available, the unit stream power cannot be estimated. For these cases, **bed slope** can be used as an alternative parameter. A precise threshold in terms of bed slope is not well defined because the energy conditions of the stream (i.e. the stream power) depend on the product of slope and discharge, (e.g., streams with very low slope but high discharge may not be classified as low-energy streams and vice versa). However, a **bed slope**  $\leq 0.001$  is normally associated to low energy conditions. Caution should be used in reaches with the presence of grade-control structures (such as check dams) that may substantially reduce the bed slope. In such cases, the **mean valley slope** should be used.

(iii) The **physiographic context** of the reach should be also considered, in terms of the landscape unit, and consequently the relief of the surrounding areas and the potential sediment sources, controlling the sediment delivery for bedload. Low-energy streams are typically associated with **lowland or coastal plains**, with low gradients and relatively low bedload, mainly composed of sand and finer sediment. However, low-energy reaches can be occasionally found in mountain or hilly areas, for example along **low-slope formerly-glaciated valleys**.

(iv) **Bed sediment** is predominantly fine (sand, silt, clay), although (fine) gravel can occasionally occur. Bank material is also mostly cohesive.

(v) **Channel planform** is typically single-thread (from straight to meandering) or multi-thread, anastomosing (i.e., low energy anabranching). Based on the combination of channel planform and bed sediment size, the **Extended River Typology (ERT)** can provide indirect information on the energy conditions. Predominantly confined, alluvial, single-thread (from 4 to 7), and alluvial braided (8, 9, 15), gravel-bed anabranching (10), wandering (11), pseudo-meandering (12, 16), and gravel-bed sinuous – meandering (13, 14) are normally associated to high or medium energy conditions. Sand- or silt-bed anastomosing and sinuous – meandering (**from 17 to 22**) are typical low-energy types. Note that the *ERT* is not always a diagnostic feature, i.e. river types from 17 to 22 are not necessarily associated with low-energy conditions. This may be especially the case where the **bedrock is comprised of sand** particles, in **highly impacted reaches**, such as where there is an artificially imposed morphology (e.g., predominantly artificial bed and/or heavily engineered, stabilised banks), or in case of dramatic channel adjustments (e.g., bed incision). Eventually, this may result in

a typical low-energy *ERT* planform (i.e., from 17 to 22) but under medium-high energy conditions. During the application of the MQI, the fact that the observed planform morphology is out of context should be recognised (see indicator F7 in Appendix 3 for details).

A particular case of low-energy streams is represented by alluvial **groundwater-fed streams**. These streams are fed by groundwater springs or by karst springs, and their flow is largely maintained by contributions from groundwater during low flow periods (see for example Berg and Allen, 2007).

### **1.5 Structure and key components of the evaluation procedure**

The following aspects are considered for the assessment of the morphological quality of river reaches, and are consistent with CEN (2002) standards and WFD requirements: (i) continuity of river processes, including longitudinal and lateral continuity; (ii) channel morphological conditions, including channel pattern, cross section configuration, and bed substrate; (iii) vegetation. These aspects are analyzed in terms of three components: (i) the geomorphological functionality of river processes and forms; (ii) artificiality; and (iii) channel adjustments.

Indicators of geomorphic **functionality** evaluate whether or not the processes and related forms responsible for the correct functioning of the river are prevented or altered by artificial elements or by channel adjustments. These processes include, among others, the continuity of sediment and wood flux, bank erosion, periodic inundation of the floodplain, morphological diversity in planform and cross section, the mobility of bed sediment, and processes of interaction with vegetation.

Indicators of **artificiality** assess the presence and frequency of artificial elements or interventions, independently of their effects on processes. Therefore, artificial elements are accounted for in two ways, i.e., based on their function or their effects as noted by the functionality indicators (i.e., as elements preventing natural processes, for example, a bank protection that prevents lateral erosion) and based on their presence and density (i.e., artificial elements that are not expected in unaltered rivers, independently of their effects). Some elements have multiple effects on the various components of the evaluation (i.e., functionality and artificiality), and apparent repeated evaluations are actually useful in discerning the impact of these elements on the different components.

Finally, indicators of **channel adjustments** are included in the evaluation. Adjustments caused by human disturbances can shift within a fluvial system in space and time, so that an alteration in channel form and process may be related to disturbances that occurred in the past and/or in a different location within the watershed (Simon and Rinaldi, 2006). Channel adjustments focus on relatively recent morphological changes (i.e., about the last 100 years) that are indicative of a systemic instability related to human factors. In fact, human-induced disturbances greatly compress timescales for channel adjustments (e.g., Rinaldi and Simon, 1998; Simon and Rinaldi, 2006). Channel changes that are not clearly related to human disturbances but that occurred during this time frame (e.g., changes related to large floods) may also be recognised but are not considered as an alteration. To this end, the information from indicators of artificiality is useful (e.g., intense sediment removal activity or the presence of dams in the watershed that could be interpreted as causes of intense channel adjustments). As noted previously, the historical river conditions (past 100 years) are not



considered as a reference state but as a comparative situation to infer whether channel adjustments have occurred over recent decades.

Indicators of geomorphic *functionality* and *channel adjustments* can be considered as '**response indicators**', whereas indicators of *artificiality* are '**pressure indicators**'. Including both 'response' and 'pressure' indicators provides a basis for understanding causes of current river conditions. The same type of pressure may result in different responses for different rivers, and for this reason, the artificiality indicators identify the potential elements of alteration, whereas the functionality and channel adjustment indicators assess the geomorphic responses (effects) to these disturbances, including past off-site impacts and adjustments. This synergic use of the different components of the assessment and their mutual feedbacks promotes a sound understanding of the river conditions and causes of alteration, which can be used to select the appropriate management actions.

Although identification of the causes of channel adjustments may not always be straightforward, a simplified analysis of past evolution, like the one carried out in the evaluation procedure, allows changes that are strictly related to human interventions to be distinguished from those that reflect the natural tendencies of the channel (e.g., natural evolutionary trajectories related to climatic variations or channel response to large floods).

**Reference conditions** are not defined in terms of a precise channel configuration or a set of channel characteristics expected in a given reach, because rivers are dynamic and follow complex evolutionary trajectories, changing their morphology through time. Therefore, reference conditions are defined considering the previous three components (functionality, artificiality, channel adjustments). For functionality, the reference conditions are given by the channel form and processes that are expected for the morphological type under examination. For artificiality, reference conditions are indicated by the absence or only slight presence of human intervention in terms of flow and sediment regulation, hydraulic structures, and river maintenance activities. If elements of artificiality exist, they should produce only small to negligible effects on the channel morphology and river processes. Finally, concerning channel adjustments in relation to reference conditions, the channel could be aggrading or incising in the long term (e.g. the last 100-200 years), but not going through major changes of channel morphology caused by human factors.

The overall evaluation is carried out by making a synergic use of two types of methods: **GIS analysis** (using available databases and remotely sensed data such as aerial photos and LiDAR DTMs) and **field surveys**.

The spatial scale of application is a river *reach*, as identified during the initial phase of segmentation. However, alterations of flow and sediment discharge require information at the segment and at the catchment scale on the types of interventions affecting these variables (i.e., dams, check dams, weirs, etc.). GIS analysis is carried out at the reach scale, while the field survey is focussed on representative subreaches (or 'sites'). In terms of the implications for management, an assessment of the entire river is advisable to avoid missing the potential causes of systemic river instability and to enable a cause-and-effect basis for river management.

As already explained in section 1.1, the MQI assessment includes only those **hydrological aspects** related to alterations of channel-forming discharges, i.e., those having significant effects on geomorphological processes. The overall changes in the hydrologic regime should

be analysed separately by calculating a specific index of hydrological alteration (e.g., IARI or IAHRIS).

In this updated version of the MQI, a new tool has been developed, the **Hydro-Morphological Quality Index (HMQI)**, and has been integrated by adding the sub-indicator ( $A1_H$ ) concerning the alteration of flows, whether or not effects on channel morphology are (as yet) observed. The MQI can continue to be applied alone to assess morphological conditions, whereas the HMQI can now provide an assessment of the overall hydromorphological (i.e., hydrological and morphological) conditions.

## 1.6 Indicators

The **complete set of indicators (28)** can be schematically represented by cross-tabulating the aspects (in rows) and components (in columns) described in the previous section (Table 1.7).

During the segmentation phase, three classes based on channel confinement were differentiated: (i) **confined channels** (hereafter 'C'); (ii) **partly confined channels** (hereafter 'PC'); and (iii) **unconfined channels** (hereafter 'U'). At this stage, two procedures were developed given that the same indicators can be used for partly confined and unconfined channels. This implies that some differences exist in the number and type of indicators for each of these two procedures, as some of the indicators are specific for confined channels while they are not suitable for partly confined and unconfined, and vice versa. For example, the presence and extension of a modern floodplain is not considered relevant in the case of confined channels, while it is an important feature for both partly confined and unconfined channels.

A summary of indicators, with assessed parameters, assessment methods, and ranges of application, is reported in Table 1.8, while a detailed description of each indicator is reported in the *Guide to the Compilation of the MQI Evaluation Forms* (Appendix 3).

**Table 1.7** List of indicators as a function of the main aspects (continuity, morphology, vegetation) and components of assessment (functionality, artificiality, channel adjustments).

		Functionality	Artificiality	Channel adjustments
<b>Continuity</b>	- longitudinal	F1	A1, A2, A3, A4, A5	
	- lateral	F2, F3, F4, F5	A6, A7	
<b>Morphology</b>	- channel pattern	F6, F7, F8	A8 (A6)	CA1
	- cross section	F9	(A4, A9, A10)	CA2, CA3
	- bed substrate	F10, F11	A9, A10, A11	
<b>Vegetation</b>		F12, F13	A12	

**Table 1.8 Definition, assessed parameters, assessment methods, and ranges of application of each indicator.**  
(modified from Rinaldi et al., 2013).

Indicators and assessed parameters	Assessment methods	Ranges of application
<b>F1 – Longitudinal continuity in sediment and wood flux</b> Presence of crossing structures (weirs, check-dams, bridges, etc) that potentially may alter natural flux of sediment and wood along the reach	<i>Remote sensing</i> and/or <i>database of interventions</i> : identification of crossing structures; <i>field survey</i> : visual assessment of partial or complete interception (qualitative)	All river types
<b>F2 – Presence of a modern floodplain</b> Width and longitudinal length of a modern floodplain	<i>Remote sensing–GIS</i> : measurement of width and longitudinal length (quantitative); <i>field survey</i> : identification/checking of modern floodplain (qualitative)	<i>PC–U</i> ; not evaluated in the case of mountain streams along steep (>3% slope) alluvial fans
<b>F3 – Hillslope – river corridor connectivity</b> Presence and length of elements of disconnection (e.g., roads) within a buffer 50-m wide for each side of the river	<i>Remote sensing–GIS</i> : identification and measurement of length of disconnecting elements (quantitative); <i>field survey</i> : checking disconnecting elements (qualitative)	C
<b>F4 – Processes of bank retreat</b> Presence/absence of retreating banks	<i>Remote sensing</i> and/or <i>field survey</i> : identification of eroding banks (qualitative)	<i>PC–U</i> ; not evaluated in the case of Low-Energy ERT types from 17 to 22
<b>F5 – Presence of a potentially erodible corridor</b> Width and longitudinal length of an erodible corridor, i.e., area without relevant structures (e.g., bank protections, levées) or infrastructure (e.g., houses, roads)	<i>Remote sensing–GIS</i> : measurement of width and longitudinal length (quantitative)	<i>PC–U</i>
<b>F6 – Bed configuration – valley slope</b> Identification of bed configuration (i.e., cascade, step pool, etc.) in cases where transverse bed structures are present and in comparison with the expected bed configuration based on valley slope	<i>Topographic maps</i> : mean valley slope (quantitative); <i>field survey</i> : identification of bed configuration (qualitative)	single-thread, alluvial C (ERT types from 4 to 7), except the case of deep streams when observation of the bed is not possible
<b>F7 – Planform pattern</b> Percentage of the reach length with altered planform and geomorphic units	<i>Remote sensing–GIS</i> : identification and measurement of length of altered portions (quantitative); <i>field survey</i> : identification/checking (qualitative)	<i>PC–U</i> ; Confined ERT types 8, 9, 10, 11, 15, 19, 22
<b>F8 – Presence of typical fluvial landforms in the floodplain</b> Presence/absence of appropriate landforms in the floodplain (e.g., oxbow lakes, secondary channels, etc.)	<i>Remote sensing</i> and/or <i>field survey</i> : identification and checking of fluvial forms (qualitative)	<i>PC–U</i>
<b>F9 – Variability of the cross section</b> Percentage of the reach length with alteration of the natural heterogeneity of the cross section that is expected for that river type and is caused by human factors	<i>Field survey</i> : identification/checking (qualitative); <i>remote sensing–GIS</i> : identification and measurement of length of altered portions (quantitative)	All types
<b>F10 – Structure of the channel bed</b> Presence/absence of alterations of bed sediment (armouring, clogging, bedrock outcrops, bed revetments)	<i>Field survey</i> : visual assessment (qualitative)	All types, except the case of deep channels when observation of the bed is not possible
<b>F11 – Presence of in-channel large wood</b> Presence/absence of large wood	<i>Field survey</i> : visual assessment (qualitative)	All types; not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with a natural absence of woody riparian vegetation
<b>F12 – Width of functional vegetation</b> Mean width (or areal extension) of functional riparian vegetation in the fluvial corridor potentially connected to channel processes	<i>Remote sensing–GIS</i> : identification and measurement of mean width of functional vegetation (quantitative)	All types; not evaluated above the tree - line and in streams with a natural absence of riparian vegetation
<b>F13 – Linear extension of functional vegetation</b> Longitudinal length of functional riparian vegetation along the banks with direct connection to the channel	<i>Remote sensing–GIS</i> : identification and measurement of longitudinal length of functional vegetation (quantitative)	All types; not evaluated above the tree - line and in streams with a natural absence of riparian vegetation
<b>A1 – Upstream alteration of flows</b> Amount of changes in discharge caused by interventions upstream (dams, diversions, spillways, retention basins, etc.)	<i>Hydrological data</i> : evaluation of reduced/increased discharge caused by interventions (quantitative). In the absence of available data, the assessment is based on the presence of flow intervention and its use (qualitative)	All types

<b>A2 – Upstream alteration of sediment discharges</b> Presence, type, and location (drainage area) of relevant structures responsible for bedload interception (dams, check-dams, weirs)	<i>Remote sensing–GIS and/or database of interventions: identification of structures and relative drainage area (quantitative)</i>	All types
<b>A3 – Alteration of flows in the reach</b> Amount of alterations of discharge caused by interventions within the reach	See A1	All types
<b>A4 – Alteration of sediment discharge in the reach</b> Type and spatial density of structures intercepting bedload (check dams, weirs) along the reach	<i>Remote sensing–GIS and/or database of interventions: identification and number of structures (quantitative)</i>	All types
<b>A5 – Crossing structures</b> Spatial density of crossing structures (bridges, fords, culverts)	<i>Remote sensing–GIS and/or database of interventions: identification and number of structures (quantitative)</i>	All types
<b>A6 – Bank protections</b> Length of protected banks (walls, rip-raps, gabions, groynes, bioengineering measures)	<i>Remote sensing–GIS and/or database of interventions: length of structures (quantitative)</i>	All types
<b>A7 – Artificial levées</b> Length and distance from the channel of artificial levées	<i>Remote sensing–GIS and/or database of interventions: length and distance of structures (quantitative)</i>	PC–U
<b>A8 – Artificial changes of river course</b> Percentage of the reach length with documented artificial modifications of the river course (meander cutoff, relocation of river channel, etc.)	<i>Historical /bibliographic information and/or database of interventions (quantitative)</i>	PC–U
<b>A9 – Other bed stabilization structures</b> Presence, spatial density and typology of other bed-stabilizing structures (sills, ramps) and revetments	<i>Remote sensing–GIS and/or database of interventions: identification, number or length of structures (quantitative)</i>	All types
<b>A10 – Sediment removal</b> Existence and relative intensity of past sediment mining activity (over the last 100 years, with a particular focus on the last 20 years)	<i>Database of interventions and/or information available by public agencies; field survey and/or remote sensing: indirect evidence (qualitative)</i>	All types; not evaluated in the case of ERT type 1
<b>A11 – Wood removal</b> Existence and relative intensity (partial or total) of in-channel wood removal during the last 20 years	<i>Database of interventions and/or information available by public agencies; field survey: additional evidence (qualitative)</i>	All types; not evaluated above the tree - line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation
<b>A12 – Vegetation management</b> Existence and relative intensity (selective or total) of vegetation cuts during the last 20 years	<i>Database of interventions and/or information available by public agencies; field survey: additional evidence (qualitative)</i>	All types; not evaluated above the tree - line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation
<b>CA1 – Adjustments in channel pattern</b> Changes in channel pattern from 1930s to 1960s based on changes in sinuosity, braiding, and anastomosing indices	<i>Remote sensing–GIS (quantitative)</i>	All types; evaluated only for sufficiently large channels
<b>CA2 – Adjustments in channel width</b> Changes in channel width from 1930s to 1960s	<i>Remote sensing–GIS (quantitative)</i>	All types; evaluated only for sufficiently large channels
<b>CA3 – Bed-level adjustments</b> Bed-level changes over the last 100 years	<i>Cross sections / longitudinal profiles (if available); field survey: evidence of incision or aggradation (qualitative/quantitative)</i>	All types; evaluated in case field evidence or information is available

### 1.7 *Classes and scores of the indicators*

The classes and corresponding scores of the indicators are briefly illustrated below and listed in Tables 1.9, 1.10, and 1.11. As previously mentioned, the scoring system was developed using the expert judgement of the authors, implying that the scores assigned to each indicator and the limits among classes are arbitrary. Scores and classes were defined and subsequently improved based on the results of a testing phase (Rinaldi et al., 2013). Scores have remained unchanged in this extended version, in order to ensure data comparability when applied to different European countries.

Three classes are generally defined for each indicator (except for a limited number with two classes or more than three classes): (A) undisturbed conditions or negligible alterations; (B) intermediate alterations; (C) very altered conditions.

For each indicator, we started by defining reference conditions for that indicator, corresponding to the absence or negligible presence of alterations (class A), and a value of 0 is assigned to this class.

For the **indicators of functionality**, a score of 2 to 3 is assigned to the intermediate class of alteration (class B), and a score of 5 to 6 to class C (highest alteration), depending on the relative importance attributed to each indicator. For some indicators (e.g., *F2* and *F10*), a fourth class is added to better highlight the different levels of alteration.

A similar approach and scoring is adopted for the **indicators of artificiality**. For indicators *A2* (upstream alteration of sediment discharges) and *A9* (other bed stabilization structures), more than three classes are defined to account for a large number of cases, and a maximum score of 12 is assigned to class C2 of *A2* (presence of a dam at the upstream boundary of the reach) because this is considered a very strong element of artificiality.

Concerning the **indicators of channel adjustments**, the first two (*CA1* and *CA2*, i.e. adjustments in channel pattern and channel width, respectively) a score of 3 for class B and 6 for class C are assigned, whereas bed-level adjustments (*CA3*) are considered to be more relevant, and so a fourth class (C2) is defined with a score of 12, to account for the case of dramatic bed-level changes (> 6 m). For example, in some Italian rivers, very marked river incision has occurred (up to 10-12 m) in the recent past mostly as a response to gravel mining (Surian and Rinaldi, 2003).

An **additional rule** is defined for the cases of an extremely dense and dominant presence of artificial elements along the reach, such as transversal structures, bank protections, levées, artificial changes of river course, bed revetments (indicators *A4*, *A6*, *A7*, *A8*, and *A9*, respectively). This rule is included to adequately rank river reaches with only a single or a few types of artificial elements but that have a very large extent and/or density, heavily affecting the overall morphological conditions (e.g., completely embanked reaches in urbanized areas; steep mountain creeks with staircase-like sequences of grade-control structures). Without this “**extra-penalty**”, the assignation of class C to only a few artificiality indicators would result in an underestimation of artificiality (and thus the concomitant overestimation of morphological quality). To weight these cases more effectively, rather than defining an additional class, an extra score of 6 or 12 is assigned and added only to the numerator of Eq. (1).

**Table 1.9 Indicators of geomorphological functionality: description of classes and definition of scores.**

Indicator	Classes	Score
<b>F1</b>	A - absence of alteration in the continuity of sediment and wood	0
	B - slight alteration (obstacles to the flux but with no interception)	3
	C - significant alteration (complete interception of sediment and wood)	5
<b>F2</b>	A - presence of a continuous (>66% of the reach) and wide modern floodplain (> $nW$ , where $n = 1$ or 2 for wandering – braided or for single thread - anabranching channels, respectively, and $W$ = channel width)	0
	B1 - presence of a discontinuous ( $10 \div 66\%$ ) but wide modern floodplain or > 66% but narrow	3
	B2 - presence of a discontinuous ( $10 \div 66\%$ ) and narrow modern floodplain	2
	C - absence of a modern floodplain or negligible presence ( $\leq 10\%$ of any width)	5
<b>F3</b>	A - full connectivity between hillslopes and river corridor (>90%)	0
	B - connectivity for a significant portion of the reach ( $33 \div 90\%$ )	3
	C - connectivity for a small portion of the reach ( $\leq 33\%$ )	5
<b>F4</b>	A - bank erosion occurs for >10% and is distributed along >33% of the reach	0
	B – bank erosion occurs for $\leq 10\%$ , or for >10% but concentrated along $\leq 33\%$ of the reach, or significant presence (>25%) of eroding banks by mass failures	2
	C - complete absence ( $\leq 2\%$ ) of retreating banks, or widespread presence (>50%) of unstable banks by mass failures	3
<b>F5</b>	A - presence of a potentially erodible corridor (EC) for a length > 66% of the reach and wide (> $nW$ , where $n = 1$ or 2 for wandering – braided or for single thread - anabranching channels, respectively, and $W$ = channel width)	0
	B - presence of a narrow ( $\leq nW$ ) potentially EC for >66%, or wide but for $33 \div 66\%$ of the reach	2
	C - presence of a potentially EC of any width but for $\leq 33\%$ of the reach	3
<b>F6</b>	A- bed forms consistent with the mean valley slope	0
	B - bed forms not consistent with the mean valley slope	3
	C - complete alteration of bed forms or the presence of an artificial bed	5
<b>F7</b>	A - absence ( $\leq 5\%$ ) of alteration of the natural heterogeneity of geomorphic units and channel width	0
	B - alteration for a limited portion of the reach ( $\leq 33\%$ )	3
	C - consistent alteration for a significant portion of the reach (>33%)	5
<b>F8</b>	A - presence of floodplain landforms (oxbow lakes, secondary channels, etc.)	0
	B - presence of traces of floodplain landforms (abandoned during the last decades) but with possible reactivation	2
	C - complete absence of floodplain landforms	3
<b>F9</b>	A - absence ( $\leq 5\%$ ) of alteration of the cross-section natural heterogeneity	0
	B - presence of alteration for a limited portion of the reach ( $\leq 33\%$ )	3
	C - presence of alteration for a significant portion of the reach (>33%)	5
<b>F10</b>	A - natural heterogeneity of bed sediments and no significant clogging	0
	B - evident armouring ( $PC-U$ only) or clogging in various portions of the site	2
	C1 - evident and widespread (>90%) armouring ( $PC-U$ only) or clogging, or burial ( $\leq 50\%$ of the reach), or occasional substrate outcrops ( $PC-U$ only)	5
	C2 - evident burial (>50%), or widespread substrate outcrops (>33% of the reach) ( $PC-U$ only) or widespread substrate alteration by bed revetments (>33% of the reach)	6
<b>F11</b>	A – significant presence of large wood along the whole reach	0
	B - negligible presence of large wood for $\leq 50\%$ of the reach	2
	C - negligible presence of large wood for >50% of the reach	3
<b>F12</b>	A - wide connected functional vegetation ( $PC-U$ : > $nW$ , where $n = 1$ or 2 for wandering – braided or for single thread - anabranching channels, respectively, and $W$ = channel width; C: >90% of hillslopes, 50 m from each bank)	0
	B - intermediate width of connected functional vegetation ( $PC-U$ : $0.5 W \div nW$ ; C: $33 \div 90\%$ of hillslopes, 50 m from each bank)	2
	C - narrow connected functional vegetation ( $PC-U$ : $\leq 0.5 W$ ; C: $\leq 33\%$ of hillslopes, 50 m from each bank)	3
<b>F13</b>	A - linear extension of riparian vegetation >90% of maximum available length	0
	B - riparian vegetation $33 \div 90\%$	3
	C - riparian vegetation $\leq 33\%$	5

**Table 1.10 Indicators of artificiality: description of classes and definition of scores.**

Indicator	Classes	Score
<b>A1<sub>M</sub></b>	A - no significant alteration ( $\leq 10\%$ ) of channel-forming discharges (return interval RI from 1.5 to 10 years) and Q with return interval $> 10$ years	0
	B - significant alteration ( $> 10\%$ ) of Q with return interval $> 10$ years	3
	C - significant alteration ( $> 10\%$ ) of channel-forming discharges	6
<b>A2</b>	A - absence or negligible presence of structures of interception of sediment fluxes	0
	B1 - presence of dams with drainage area $5 \div 33\%$ , and/or weirs or check dams with total interception of bedload and drainage areas $33 \div 66\%$ , and/or weirs or check dams with partial or no interception of bedload and drainage areas $> 33\%$ ( <i>plain/hills areas</i> ) or $> 66\%$ ( <i>mountain areas</i> )	3
	B2 - presence of dams for drainage area $33 \div 66\%$ , and/or weirs or check dams with total interception of bedload and drainage areas $> 66\%$	6
	C1 - presence of dams for drainage area $> 66\%$	9
	C2 - presence of a dam at the upstream boundary of the reach	12
<b>A3</b>	A - no significant alteration ( $\leq 10\%$ ) of channel-forming discharges and Q with return interval $> 10$ years	0
	B - significant alteration ( $> 10\%$ ) of Q with return interval $> 10$ years	3
	C - significant alteration ( $> 10\%$ ) of channel-forming discharges	6
<b>A4</b>	A - absence of structures that intercept sediment flux (dams, check dams, weirs)	0
	B – <i>channels with <math>S \leq 1\%</math></i> : consolidation check dams and/or abstraction weirs (including instream retention basins) $\leq 1$ every 1000 m; <i>steep channels (<math>S &gt; 1\%</math>)</i> : consolidation check dams/weirs $\leq 1$ every 200 m and/or one or more open check dams (including instream retention basins)	4
	C - <i>channels with <math>S \leq 1\%</math></i> : consolidation check dams and/or abstraction weirs (including instream retention basins) $> 1$ every 1000 m; <i>steep channels (<math>S &gt; 1\%</math>)</i> : consolidation check dams $> 1$ every 200 m and/or one or more retention check dams	6
	Or presence of a dam or artificial reservoir at the downstream boundary ( <i>any bed slope</i> )	
	<i>Where transversal structures, including bed sills and ramps (A9), are <math>&gt; 1</math> every d1, add 6</i> <i>Where transversal structures, including bed sills and ramps (A9), are <math>&gt; 1</math> every d2, add 12</i> <i>d1=150 m and d2=100 m in steep channels, d1=750 m and d2=500 m in channels with <math>S \leq 1\%</math></i>	
<b>A5</b>	A - absence of crossing structures (bridges, fords culverts)	0
	B - presence of some crossing structure ( $\leq 1$ every 1000 m on average in the reach)	2
	C - presence of numerous crossing structures ( $> 1$ every 1000 m on average in the reach)	3
<b>A6</b>	A - absence or localized presence of bank protections ( $\leq 5\%$ total length of the banks)	0
	B - presence of protections for $\leq 33\%$ total length of the banks (sum of both banks)	3
	C - presence of protections for $> 33\%$ total length of the banks (sum of both banks)	6
<i>For a high density of bank protections (<math>&gt; 50\%</math>) add 6</i> <i>For an extremely high density of bank protections (<math>&gt; 80\%</math>) add 12</i>		
<b>A7</b>	A - levées absent, set-back, or present and in contact $\leq 5\%$ total length of the banks	0
	B - medium presence of levées close and/or in contact (in contact $\leq 50\%$ bank length)	3
	C - high presence of levées close and/or in contact (in contact $> 50\%$ bank length)	6
<i>For a high density of bank-edge levées (<math>&gt; 66\%</math>) add 6</i> <i>For an extremely high density of bank-edge levées (<math>&gt; 80\%</math>) add 12</i>		
<b>A8</b>	A - absence of artificial changes of the river course in the past (meanders cut-off, channel diversions, etc.);	0
	B - presence of changes for $\leq 10\%$ of the reach length	2
	C - presence of changes for $> 10\%$ of the reach length	3
<i>In the case of historical drainage and dredging works for <math>&gt; 50\%</math> of the reach (when an additional score is not already applied for A6 and/or A7), add 6</i> <i>In the case of historical drainage and dredging works for <math>&gt; 80\%</math> of the reach (when an additional score is not already applied for A6 and/or A7), add 12</i>		
<b>A9</b>	A - absence of structures (bed sills/ramps) and revetments	0
	B - limited presence of structures ( $\leq 1$ every n, where n = 200 m for <i>mountain areas</i> , n = 1000 m for <i>plain/hills areas</i> ) and/or revetments ( $\leq 15\%$ impermeable and/or $\leq 25\%$ permeable)	3
	C1 - presence of many structures ( $> 1$ every n) and/or significant bed revetments ( $\leq 33\%$ impermeable and/or $\leq 50\%$ permeable)	6
	C2 - presence of impermeable bed revetments $> 33\%$ and/or permeable revetments $> 50\%$	8
<i>For a high density of bed revetment (impermeable <math>&gt; 50\%</math> or permeable <math>&gt; 80\%</math>) add 6</i> <i>For an extremely high density of bed revetment (impermeable <math>&gt; 80\%</math>) add 12</i>		

**Table 1.10 (continued) Indicators of artificiality and channel adjustments: description of classes and definition of scores.**

<b>A10</b>	<i>PC-U</i> :	
	A - absence of recent (last 20 years) and past (over the last 100 years) significant sediment removal activities	0
	B1 – sediment removal activity in the past but absent during the last 20 years	3
	B2 – recent sediment removal activity (last 20 years) but absent in the past	4
	C – sediment removal activity in both the past and during last 20 years	6
	<i>C</i> :	
	A - absence of significant sediment removal activities during the last 20 years	0
	B - localized sediment removal activities during the last 20 years	3
	C - widespread sediment removal activities during the last 20 years	6
<b>A11</b>	A - absence of removal of woody material at least during the last 20 years	0
	B – partial removal of woody material during the last 20 years	2
	C - total removal of woody material during the last 20 years	5
<b>A12</b>	A - no cutting interventions on riparian vegetation (last 20 years) and aquatic vegetation (last 5 years)	0
	B - selective cuts and/or clear cuts over $\leq 50\%$ of the reach (last 20 years) and partial or no cutting of aquatic vegetation (last 5 years), or no cutting of riparian but partial or total cutting of aquatic vegetation	2
	C - clear cuts over $> 50\%$ of the reach (last 20 years), or selective cuts and/or clear cuts of riparian vegetation $\leq 50\%$ of the reach but total cutting of aquatic vegetation (last 5 years)	5
<b>CA1</b>	A - absence of changes in channel pattern since 1930s – 1960s	0
	B - change to a similar channel pattern to that of the 1930s – 1960s ( <i>PC-U</i> ) or change of channel pattern from 1930s – 1960s ( <i>C</i> )	3
	C - change to a different channel pattern from that of the 1930s – 1960s (only <i>PC-U</i> )	6
<b>CA2</b>	A - absent or limited changes ( $\leq 15\%$ ) since 1930s – 1960s	0
	B - moderate changes ( $15 \div 35\%$ ) from that of the 1930s – 1960s ( <i>PC-U</i> ) or changes $> 15\%$ from that of the 1930s – 1960s ( <i>C</i> )	3
	C - intense changes ( $> 35\%$ ) from that of the 1930s – 1960s (only <i>PC-U</i> )	6
<b>CA3</b>	A - negligible bed-level changes ( $\leq 0.5$ m)	0
	B - limited or moderate bed-level changes ( $0.5 \div 3$ m)	4
	C1 - intense bed-level changes ( $> 3$ m)	8
	C2 – very intense bed-level changes ( $> 6$ m) (only <i>PC-U</i> )	12

### 1.8 Calculation of the Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

A total score is computed as the sum of scores across all components and aspects. The Morphological Alteration Index (MAI) is first defined as follows:

$$MAI = Stot / Smax \quad (1)$$

where Stot is the sum of the scores, and Smax is the maximum score that could be reached when all appropriate indicators are in class C. Therefore, MAI ranges from 0 (no alteration) to 1 (maximum alteration).

The Morphological Quality Index is then defined as

$$MQI = 1 - MAI = 1 - Stot / Smax \quad (2)$$

This index is therefore directly proportional to the quality of the reach and inversely to the alterations, varying from 0 (minimum quality) to 1 (maximum quality).

According to this structure, reference conditions (i.e., class A for each indicator, corresponding to  $MQI = 1$ ) are identified with the following: (i) the full functionality of geomorphic processes along the reach; (ii) the absence or negligible presence of artificial elements along the reach and to some extent (in terms of flow and sediment fluxes) in the catchment; and (iii) the absence of significant channel adjustments (configuration, width, bed elevation) over a temporal frame of about 100 years.



As previously mentioned, the overall assessment procedure is carried out by using two different **evaluation forms**: one for confined channels, and one for partly confined and unconfined channels (see Appendices 1 and 2, respectively). An *electronic format* of the evaluation forms is available at [http://www.isprambiente.gov.it/pre\\_meteo/idro/idro.html](http://www.isprambiente.gov.it/pre_meteo/idro/idro.html), which allows automatic calculation of the indicators once the input values are entered.

The total score (*S<sub>max</sub>*) can vary within each category (confined, partly confined and unconfined) depending on the river type and/or the physical context. For example, indicator *F6* (bed morphology in single-thread confined channels) is not evaluated for bedrock streams; or *F10* (structure of the channel bed) is not applied in deep channels where its evaluation is impossible.

During the assessment and the compilation of the evaluation forms, some indicators may be affected by a lack of data or information or may require an interpretation that involves a certain degree of subjectivity. To help in indicating how certain the user feels concerning the answer, a *degree of confidence* (low, medium, high) and a second (alternative) choice in the classes can be expressed. This is calculated by taking the scores for the second choice (with low or medium confidence in the answer), and obtaining a range of variability rather than a single final value of the MQI.

The three components (geomorphological functionality, artificiality, and channel adjustments) do not have the same weight within the final score of the MQI: artificiality has the highest weight on the overall scoring, followed by functionality and channel adjustments. This reflects the authors' opinion that the knowledge of past channel adjustments is important but has a minor weight in the overall score compared to the other two components. In other words, past conditions are important and may affect the morphological quality, but the artificial constraints and the functioning of processes in the present condition are the two main components of the evaluation.

The following classes of morphological quality were defined: (i) very good or high,  $0.85 \leq \text{MQI} \leq 1$ ; (ii) good,  $0.7 \leq \text{MQI} < 0.85$ ; (iii) moderate,  $0.5 \leq \text{MQI} < 0.7$ ; (iv) poor,  $0.3 \leq \text{MQI} < 0.5$ ; (v) very poor or bad,  $0 \leq \text{MQI} < 0.3$ .

Additionally, the MQI can be divided into its various components, and a series of *sub-indices* can be calculated (see Sub-indices in Appendix 3).

## **1.9 Application of the MQI**

This section details some practical information concerning the application of the MQI.

### **1.9.1 Expertise**

The application of the MQI should be carried out by people with appropriate background knowledge of the underlying principles in fluvial geomorphology as well as being sufficiently trained. Similarly to other fields of river sciences (e.g., freshwater biology), application without the necessary background and skills could seriously affect the success of the assessment.

### **1.9.2 Working phases and time required**

The sequence of working phases is summarised as follows, with specific reference to the assessment phase, i.e. the application of the MQI to a given delimited reach.

#### *1. Collection of existing material*

It is assumed that the general setting and segmentation phase has already been carried out. Should segmentation not be available, a minimum delineation can be achieved only for the specific portion or reach under investigation. This will require the collection of additional material (see section 1.3).

Once the reach delineation has been established, this phase will focus on collecting data and information mainly at the reach scale, including: (i) the most recent remotely sensed images (aerial photos or satellite images with sufficiently high resolution) representing the current river conditions; (ii) historical aerial photographs (between about the 1930s and 1960s); (iii) a map layer of interventions (when available), including existing information on sediment and vegetation management by public agencies. Information on relevant structures responsible for the alteration of flows and/or bedload interception is necessary for the sub-catchment upstream from the reach.

#### *2. Preliminary remote sensing - GIS analysis*

During this phase, the most recent remotely sensed images are analysed, and some preliminary GIS analysis is performed. For example, the boundaries of the river corridor (in the case of an unconfined or partly confined reach) and the channel margins are identified, and some indicators can undergo preliminary assessment or some tentative hypotheses can be made before the field survey (e.g., bank erosion, potentially erodible corridor, planform pattern, width and linear extension of functional vegetation, etc.). This will aid in identifying critical points and prioritising locations to visit during the field survey (see next step). Measurement of channel width in contemporary and historical conditions (the latter evaluated only in the case of sufficiently large rivers) can be carried out during this phase: this may require georeferencing of aerial photographs and digitising channel margins. During this and the following phase, the hard copy of the *Evaluation Forms* can be used.

#### *3. Field survey*

It is important, if the results of the field survey are to be optimized, that it addresses and checks the critical aspects identified during the previous phase. Furthermore, this phase is strictly necessary for a series of indicators requiring field observation and/or measurement (e.g., presence and extension of a modern floodplain, structure of the channel bed, presence of in-channel large wood, etc.). If a map layer of interventions is available, this will

facilitate and minimize the fieldwork. Therefore, the field survey should possibly be preceded by the development of a detailed plan of the areas to be visited.

#### *4. Finalizing GIS analysis*

Once the critical aspects of the evaluation have been resolved by means of the field survey, the GIS analysis and the measurement of quantitative parameters can be finalised during this final phase. As well as completing the hard copy of the *Evaluation Forms*, the electronic format can be compiled during this final phase.

Some additional aspects to be considered during the application for the MQI are the following.

#### *Period of the year for carrying out the field survey*

There are no specific requirements or constraints on the time of year to carry out the field survey. The only recommendation is to avoid periods of high flow events, for obvious safety reasons, and because this would create unfavourable conditions for carrying out field observations, as most of the channel bed would be submerged. The assessment is not precluded during excessively low flow (or dry) periods. It is important to note that the assessment concerns the entire stream channel and river corridor, and not only its submerged portion.

#### *Timing of the MQI assessment*

The procedure should not be applied shortly after a large flood (e.g., flood with a return period > 10-20 years). The effects of such events could strongly influence the interpretation of forms and processes. In such cases, the application of the MQI some years after the occurrence of the flood is advisable.

It is important to note that the channel delimitation is carried out using the most recent remote sensing images selected for the MQI application. During the execution of the field survey, some channel modification due to erosion or deposition may be observed (this is very likely to be the case in dynamic streams). In such circumstances, however, the operator should not make any modification to the channel boundaries (or other natural elements) because these are not relevant for the MQI result. The evaluation of indicators based on GIS measurements, therefore, refers to the date of the remote sensing images. Field observations are used to verify and integrate those aspects which cannot be determined by remote sensing, further to evaluating those indicators which can be exclusively assessed in the field. Concerning artificiality, field observations can provide some updated information regarding interventions that was not available from existing map layers. These need to be considered since they are relevant for the MQI result.

In summary, the MQI assessment cannot be referred to a precise date (given that it is not a field sampling method), but it refers, rather, to an interval of time ranging from the date of the images used for the analysis and the date of the field survey.

### **Time required for the application of the MQI**

As previously emphasised, the MQI is not just a field sampling methodology and so cannot be realised in only a few hours of field work. Quantification of the time required for the application of the MQI is not straightforward as it depends on a series of factors, mainly: (i) the competence, training level, and experience of the operator; (ii) the availability of data and other information (e.g., the existence of a map layer of interventions and management practices will significantly reduce the time). The time required for an application to a single reach also depends on the number of reaches of the same segment or river being assessed. Application to various reaches will generally optimise the work and reduce the unit time required for each reach: some steps carried out for the whole segment/river may require about the same time as for each single reach. With reference to the four working phases described earlier, the following comments can be made:

1. *Collection of existing material.* This is extremely variable and depends considerably on the data and material that is already available before starting the assessment. In some cases, when all the material is already available, only a small amount of time is required. Should the reach delineation need to be carried out, this will significantly increase the required time, as some parameters (confinement degree, sinuosity index, etc.) need to be measured to define the confinement class and the river type.
2. *Preliminary remote sensing - GIS analysis.* Depending on the river channel type and size (for example, small confined streams vs. large unconfined rivers) this phase can require a time approximately ranging from a few hours to one day.
3. *Field survey.* Time required for the field survey is commonly one day. This may be reduced (to a minimum of half a day, i.e. two reaches per day) in the case of simple, relatively uniform reaches.
4. *Finalizing GIS analysis.* This phase is also variable, depending on the complexity or uniformity of the reach, but a maximum of one day is likely to be needed to precisely quantify all the variables required to estimate the indicators, also allowing for the application of the MQIm.

### **1.9.3 Ranges of application**

The MQI evaluation can be applied to any natural (sensu WFD) river water body. The following ranges of application and/or limitations can be considered:

- It can be applied to strongly artificial reaches, e.g. partially or completely fixed reaches in urban areas.
- It is not applicable to artificial water bodies, lakes, or reservoirs.
- It is not applicable to transitional water bodies (near the river mouth) as they are influenced by tidal and coastal processes.

## 2 Integrated tools: HMQI and MQIm

Following the MQI, two integrated tools have been developed for different contexts and applications. The Hydro-Morphological Quality Index (HMQI) is an extension of the MQI with the inclusion of an additional hydrological indicator, allowing for an assessment of the overall hydrological and morphological conditions. The Morphological Quality Index for monitoring (MQIm), has been specifically designed to assess the environmental impact assessment of interventions, including both flood mitigation and restoration actions.

### 2.1 The Hydro-Morphological Quality Index (HMQI)

The **Hydro-Morphological Quality Index (HMQI)** is an extension of the MQI designed to assess the overall hydromorphological conditions of a stream reach as envisaged by the WFD.

It includes all the same indicators of the MQI, with the addition of a sub-indicator ( $A1_H$ ) concerning the upstream alteration of flows with potentially relevant effects on channel morphology (see Appendix for details).

The additional score of the  $A1_H$  indicator (depending on the class, from A to C) is then added to the sum of the MQI scores ( $Stot$ ), providing the Hydro-Morphological Quality Index (HMQI) defined in the same way of the MQI, i.e.:

$$HMQI = 1 - Stot/Smax \quad (3)$$

where  $Smax$  remains the same of the MQI (i.e., the  $A1_H$  score is added only to the numerator of the equation).

Similarly to the MQI, the following classes of the overall hydro-morphological quality are defined: (i) very good or high,  $0.85 \leq HMQI \leq 1$ ; (ii) good,  $0.7 \leq HMQI < 0.85$ ; (iii) moderate,  $0.5 \leq HMQI < 0.7$ ; (iv) poor,  $0.3 \leq HMQI < 0.5$ ; (v) very poor or bad,  $0 \leq HMQI < 0.3$ .

### 2.2 The Morphological Quality Index for monitoring (MQIm)

#### 2.2.1 Introduction

The Morphological Quality Index (MQI) was mainly designed to assess the overall current morphological conditions of a stream reach (i.e., a relatively homogeneous portion of the river with a length of the order of some km), reflecting alterations over a long time scale. Therefore, the MQI may not be suitable for monitoring changes of channel conditions occurring in a short period of time and/or in small portions of the reach (e.g., due to the removal of a bank protection structure).

To address this limitation, a new index, named the Morphological Quality Index for monitoring (MQIm), has specifically been designed to take into account small changes (e.g. relative to small portions of a reach) and short time scales (i.e., a few years). Therefore, MQIm is particularly suitable for the environmental impact assessment of interventions, including both flood mitigation and restoration actions.

This section presents this new tool and shows typical ranges of its application in river monitoring, management and restoration.

### 2.2.2 Characteristics of the MQIm and differences with the MQI

The need to adopt a new procedure for monitoring morphological quality derives from the investigated spatial and temporal scales, which are different from the previous phase of assessment and classification of the current morphological state. Concerning the temporal scale, the MQI evaluates the overall morphological current conditions deriving from modifications which have occurred over the last 50-100 years. The MQIm is a specific tool for monitoring changes in morphological quality over a time scale of a few years, for example after the implementation of an intervention which could have enhanced or degraded the morphological conditions.

The main differences between MQI and MQIm are summarised in Table 2.1 and are briefly as follows:

- (1) The MQI is a tool for the evaluation, classification, and monitoring of the *morphological state* (i.e., good, poor, etc.). The MQIm is a tool for specifically monitoring morphological conditions in the short term, i.e. to evaluate the *tendency of morphological conditions* (enhancement or deterioration).
- (2) The MQI scores are based on *discrete classes*, whereas the scores of many MQIm indicators are based on *continuous mathematical functions*.
- (3) As a consequence of the previous point, MQIm is more sensitive to changes occurring at a *temporal scale of a few years*.
- (4) Although the MQI *indicators of channel adjustments* (CA1, CA2, and CA3) should be monitored, they are not explicitly included in the calculation of the MQIm. This is because channel adjustments that occurred in the past are necessary for evaluating channel instability in the MQI, whereas a recent, short term change cannot be interpreted and quantified with the same criterion. In fact, current trends of adjustment must be set in the context of the evolutionary trajectory of changes and cannot easily be quantified for the purposes of the MQIm calculation. Channel adjustments are however indirectly taken into account by some of the indicators of functionality. For example, in the case of a river reach changing from single-thread to braided as a response to bank protection removal, adjustment of channel pattern is not quantified by the indicator CA1 in the MQIm, but the geomorphological functionality (e.g., indicator F7) must be interpreted accounting for this adjustment towards more natural conditions.

Table 2.1 Main differences between MQI and MQIm.

	Aim	Temporal scale	Scores	Applications
<b>MQI</b>	Assessment, classification and monitoring of the current morphological state	50 – 100 years	Discrete classes	Tool to evaluate morphological alterations compared to undisturbed conditions
<b>MQIm</b>	Monitoring of morphological conditions in the short term	5 – 10 years	Continuous functions and discrete classes	Tool to evaluate changes of morphological quality in the short term

### 2.2.3 Scoring system and mathematical functions

Indicators based on presence/absence criteria and/or predominantly based on field observations and interpretations are maintained in the format used for MQI, whereas a series of mathematical functions are defined for those indicators based on quantitative

parameters (e.g., percentage of altered reach, number of artificial structures, etc.) (Table 2.2).

**Table 2.2** List of indicators for which the scores are defined by mathematical functions.

Functionality	Artificiality
<i>F2, F3, F5, F6, F7, F9, F12, F13</i>	<i>A2, A4, A5, A6, A7, A8, A9, A12</i>

Mathematical functions for the indicators reported in Table 2.2 have been defined on the basis of the following criteria (Figure 2.1):

- (1) Linear “upper” and “lower” interpolating functions are first defined, based on the histogram of discrete classes used for the MQI.
- (2) The MQIm function is obtained by a series of segments equidistant from the upper and lower interpolating functions. Concerning the last discrete class (on the right of Fig. 2.1), a segment parallel to the lower interpolating function is assumed.

Similarly to the MQI, the Morphological Quality Index for monitoring (MQIm) is defined as:

$$\text{MQIm} = 1 - \text{Stot}/\text{Smax} \quad (4)$$

where Stot is the sum of the scores, and Smax is the maximum score that could be reached when all indicators assume the maximum possible score. Note that the possible maximum score for each indicator is higher than in the case of MQI, as can be observed in Figure 2.1, therefore Smax is also higher. This implies that the values of MQI and MQIm are not directly comparable.

For the application of the MQIm, it is possible to use the same field **evaluation forms** as for the MQI by using the space below the indicators with mathematical functions to report the specific values of the parameters needed for the calculation of the indicator. Then, the electronic format of the MQIm evaluation forms is available at <http://wiki.reformrivers.eu>, allowing automatic calculation of the indicators once the input values have been typed in.



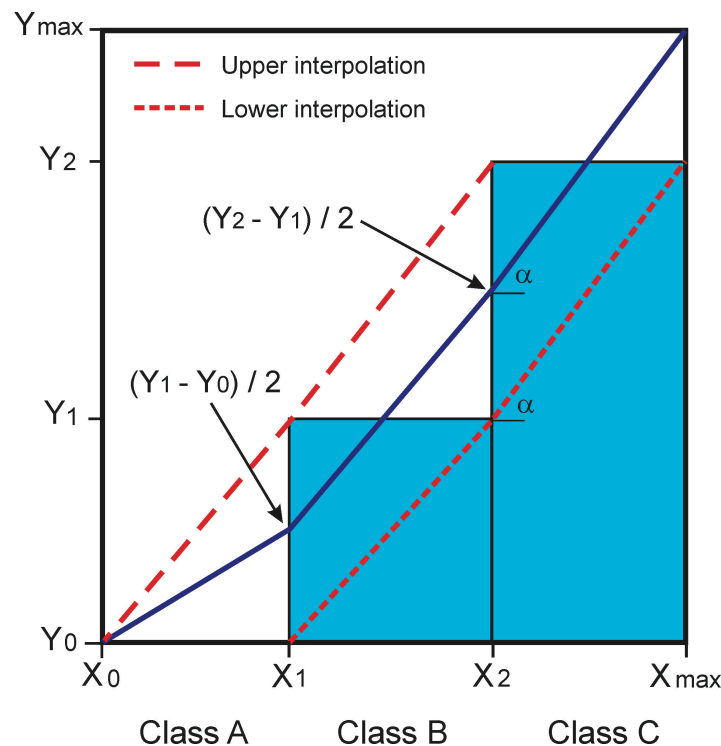


Figure 2.1 Procedure for the definition of the mathematical function of a MQIm indicator deriving from the discrete classes of the same MQI indicator.

## 2.2.4 Evaluation procedures, limitations and applications

The MQI and MQIm evaluate morphological quality at a different temporal scale, therefore they can be considered as complementary rather than alternative assessments. The MQIm provides an indication on the *trend of morphological quality* in the short term. To this end, the value of MQIm related to a single situation is not meaningful, but the difference of the index between two assessments is particularly relevant, indicating a *tendency to an enhancement or deterioration* of the morphological quality.

For the previous reasons, it is important to integrate the MQIm assessment with a new evaluation of the MQI, thus providing information on a possible change in the overall state of the reach, in addition to its tendency. To this end, note that the new calculation of MQI will be available once all the information for the MQIm is available, with the sole addition of the indicators of channel adjustments.

For the application of both the MQI and MQIm, the following two specific cases require particular caution:

(1) *River restoration interventions*. In the case of the implementation of a restoration project involving a significant portion of the reach, it is advisable to conduct the assessment some time after the intervention, for example after some formative flood event. In any case, a period of at least 5 years subsequent to the intervention is advisable. This is particularly true in the case of interventions of “morphological reconstruction”, in which case it is necessary for the river to be able to adapt to the new conditions.

(2) *Large flood events*. In the case of the occurrence of a flood event of high intensity (e.g., flood with a return period  $> 10$ -20 years), particular attention must be paid to the interpretation of any eventual morphological changes. In fact, the effects of such events

could strongly influence the interpretation of forms and processes. In such cases, the application of the MQI and MQIm some years after the occurrence of the flood is advisable.

Some main *applications* of the MQIm for monitoring morphological conditions are as follows:

(1) *WFD monitoring*. The MQIm can be adopted, in integration with the MQI, for WFD monitoring, with a spatio-temporal frequency that can be defined depending on the type of monitoring (surveillance, operative, investigative).

(2) *Evaluation of the impact of new interventions*. The MQIm is particularly suitable for evaluating the possible impacts of an intervention (including river restoration projects) during the design stage given that this index is sensitive to the impact of interventions even of a limited length compared to the reach length. To this purpose, an *ante operam* assessment, evaluating the current conditions, can be followed by a *post operam* assessment, making assumptions concerning the expected changes in some of the morphological indicators in response to the intervention. The comparison of *ante* and *post operam* assessment will indicate the tendency to improvement or deterioration of the project.

### 3 References

- Belletti, B., Rinaldi, M., Gurnell, A.M., Buijse, A.D., Mosselman, E., 2015. A review of methods for river hydromorphological assessment. *Environmental Earth Sciences*, doi: 10.1007/s12665-014-3558-1.
- Brierley, G.J., Fryirs, K.A., 2005. *Geomorphology and River Management: Applications of the River Style Framework*. Blackwell, Oxford, UK, 398 pp.
- Comité Européen de Normalisation (CEN), 2002. *A Guidance Standard for Assessing the Hydromorphological Features of Rivers*. European Committee for Standardization, EN 14614, Brussels, Belgium, 24 pp.
- Chandesris, A., Mengin, N., Malavoi, J.R., Souchon, Y., Pella, H., Wasson, J.G., 2008. *Système Relationnel d'Audit de l'Hydromorphologie des Cours d'Eau. Principes et méthodes*, v3.1. Cemagref, Lyon Cedex, 81 pp.
- European Commission, 2003. *Rivers and Lakes – Typologies, Reference Conditions and Classification Systems. Common Implementation Strategy for the Water Framework Directive (2000/60/EC), Guidance document n°10*, Brussels, Belgium, 87 pp.
- Florsheim, J.L., Mount, J.F., Chin, A., 2008. Bank erosion as a desirable attribute of rivers. *Bioscience* 58(6), 519-529.
- Fryirs, K.A., Arthington, A., Grove, J., 2008. Principles of river condition assessment. In: Brierley, G., Fryirs, K.A. (Eds.), *River Futures: An Integrative Scientific Approach to River Repair*. Society for Ecological Restoration International, Island Press, Washington, DC, USA, pp. 100-124.
- Habersack, H., Piégay, H., 2008. River restoration in the Alps and their surroundings: past experience and future challenges. In: Habersack, H., Piégay, H., Rinaldi, M. (Eds.), *Gravel-bed Rivers VI - From Process Understanding to River Restoration. Developments in Earth Surface Processes*, Elsevier, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, pp. 703-738.
- Gurnell, A.M., Bussettini, M., Camenen, B., González Del Tánago, M., Grabowski, R.C., Hendriks, D., Henshaw, A., Latapie, A., Rinaldi, M., Surian, N., 2014. A multi-scale framework and indicators of hydromorphological processes and forms. Deliverable 2.1, Part 1, of REFORM (REstoring rivers FOR effective catchment Management), a Collaborative project (large-scale integrating project) funded by the European Commission within the 7th Framework Programme under Grant Agreement 282656.
- Gurnell, A.M., Rinaldi, M., Belletti, B., Bizzi, S., Blamauer, B., Braca, G., Buijse, A.D., Bussettini, M., Camenen, B., Comiti, F., Demarchi, L., García de Jalón, D., González Del Tánago, M., Grabowski, R.C., Gunn, I.D.M., Habersack, H., Hendriks, D., Henshaw, A., Klösch, M., Lastoria, B., Latapie, A., Marcinkowski, P., Martínez-Fernández, V., Mosselman, E., Mountford, J.O., Nardi, L., Okrusko, T., O'Hare, M.T., Palma, M., Percopo, C., Surian, N., van de Bund, W., Weissteiner, C., Ziliani, L. 2016. A multi-scale

- hierarchical framework for developing understanding of river behaviour to support river management. *Aquatic Sciences* 78: 1-16.
- ISPRA, 2009. Implementazione della Direttiva 2000/60/CE - Analisi e valutazione degli aspetti idromorfologici. <http://www.sintai.sinanet.apat.it/view/index.faces>.
- Kondolf, G.M., 1995. Geomorphological stream classification in aquatic habitat restoration: uses and limitations. *Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems* 5, 127-141.
- Kondolf, G.M., Montgomery, D., Piégay, H., Schmitt, L., 2003a. Geomorphic classifications of rivers and streams. In: Kondolf, G.M., Piégay, H. (Eds.), *Tools in Fluvial Geomorphology*. John Wiley and Sons, Chichester, UK, pp. 171-204.
- Kondolf, G.M., Piégay, H., Sear, D., 2003b. Integrating geomorphological tools in ecological and management studies. In: Kondolf, G.M., Piégay, H. (Eds.), *Tools in Fluvial Geomorphology*. John Wiley and Sons, Chichester, UK, pp. 633-660.
- LAWA, 2000. Gewässerstrukturgütebewertung in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland. Verfahren für kleine und mittelgroße Fließgewässer, Berlin.
- Leopold, L.B., Wolman, M.G., 1957. River channel patterns: braided, meandering and straight. *US.Geol.Surv., Prof.Paper*, 282-B, 39-85.
- Liébault, F., Piégay, H., 2002. Causes of 20th century channel narrowing in mountain and piedmont rivers of southeastern France. *Earth Surf Proc Land* 27, 425-444.
- Montgomery, D.R., Buffington, J.M., 1997. Channel-reach morphology in mountain drainage basins. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*, 109 (5), 596-611.
- Nanson, G.C., Croke, J.C., 1992. A genetic classification of floodplains. *Geomorphology*, 4(6): 459- 486.
- Ollero, O.A., Ballarín, F.D., Díaz, B.E., Mora, M.D., Sánchez, F.M., Acín, N.V., Echeverría, A.M.T., Granado, G.D., Ibisate, G.A., Sánchez, G.L., Sánchez, G.N., 2007. Un índice hidrogeomorfológico (IHG) para la evaluación del estado ecológico de sistemas fluviales. *Geographica* 52, 113-141.
- Ollero, A., Ibisate, A., Gonzalo, L.E., Acín, V., Ballarín, D., Díaz, E., Domenech, S., Gimeno, M., Granado, D., Horacio, J., Mora, D., Sánchez, M., 2011. The IHG index for hydromorphological quality assessment of rivers and streams: updated version. *Limnetica* 30(2), 255-262.
- Piégay, H., Darby, S.E., Mosselman, E., Surian, N., 2005. A review of techniques available for delimiting the erodible river corridor: a sustainable approach to managing bank erosion. *River Research and Applications*, 21, 773-789.
- Poff, N.L., Allan, J.D., Bain, M.B., Karr, J.R., Prestegard, K.L., Richter, B.D., Sparks, R.E., Stromberg, J.C., 1997. The natural flow regime: a new paradigm for riverine conservation and restoration. *BioScience*, 47(11), 769-784.
- Raven, P.J., Fox, P.J.A., Everard, M., Holmes, N.T.H., Dawson, F.H., 1997. River habitat survey: a new system for classifying rivers according to their habitat quality. In: Boon,

- P.J., Howell, D.L. (Eds.), *Freshwater Quality: Defining the Indefinable?* Scottish Natural Heritage, The Stationery Office, Edinburgh, Scotland, pp. 215-234.
- Richter, B.D., Baumgartner, J.V., Powell, J., Braun, D.P. 1996. A Method for Assessing Hydrologic Alteration within Ecosystems. *Conservation Biology*, 10(4), 1163-1174.
- Rinaldi, M., Simon, A., 1998. Bed-level adjustments in the Arno River, central Italy. *Geomorphology* 22, 57-71.
- Rinaldi, M., Surian, N., Comiti, F., Bussettini, M., 2012. Guidebook for the evaluation of stream morphological conditions by the Morphological Quality Index (MQI). Version 1.1, ISPRA, Rome, September 2012, <http://www.isprambiente.gov.it/en/publications/handbooks-and-guidelines/guidebook-for-the-evaluation-of-stream-1>.
- Rinaldi, M., Surian, N., Comiti, F., Bussettini, M., 2013. A method for the assessment and analysis of the hydromorphological condition of Italian streams: the Morphological Quality Index (MQI). *Geomorphology*, doi: 10.1016/j.geomorph.2012.09.009, 180-181, 96-108.
- Rinaldi, M., Surian, N., Comiti, F., Bussettini, M., Belletti, B., Nardi, L., Lastoria, B., Golfieri, B., 2015. Guidebook for the evaluation of stream morphological conditions by the Morphological Quality Index (MQI), Deliverable 6.2, Part 3, of REFORM (REstoring rivers FOR effective catchment Management), a Collaborative project (large-scale integrating project) funded by the European Commission within the 7th Framework Programme under Grant Agreement 282656, 163 pp.
- Rinaldi, M., Gurnell, A.M., Gonzalez del Tanago, M., Bussettini, M., Hendriks, D., 2016. Classification of river morphology and hydrology to support management and restoration. *Aquatic Sciences*, doi: 10.1007/s00027-015-0438-z, 78(1), 17-33.
- Simon, A., Rinaldi, M., 2006. Disturbance, stream incision, and channel evolution: the roles of excess transport capacity and boundary materials in controlling channel response. *Geomorphology* 79, 361-383.
- Sneath, P.H.A., Snokal, R.R., 1973. *Numerical Taxonomy: The Principles and Practice of Numerical Classification*. W.H. Freeman, San Francisco, CA, USA, 573 pp.
- Surian, N., Rinaldi, M., 2003. Morphological response to river engineering and management in alluvial channels in Italy. *Geomorphology* 50(4), 307-326.
- Surian, N., Rinaldi, M., Pellegrini, L., Audisio, C., Maraga, F., Teruggi, L.B., Turitto, O., Ziliani, L., 2009. Channel adjustments in northern and central Italy over the last 200 years. In: James, L.A., Rathburn, S.L., Whittecar, G.R. (Eds.), *Management and Restoration of Fluvial Systems with Broad Historical Changes and Human Impacts*. Geological Society of America Special Paper 451, Boulder, CO, USA, pp. 83-95.
- Wohl, E., Angermeier, P.L., Bledsoe, B., Kondolf, G.M., McDonnell, L., Merritt, D.M., Palmer, M.A., Poff, L., Tarboton, T., 2005. River Restoration, *Water Resources Research* 41, W10301, doi: 10.1029/2005WR003985.
- Wyżga, B., Zawiejska, J., Radecki-Pawlik, A., Amirowicx, A., 2010. A method for the assessment of hydromorphological river quality and its application to the Czarny

Dunajec, Polish Carpathians. In: Radecki-Pawlik, A., Hernik, J. (Eds.), Cultural Landscapes of River Valleys. Agricultural University in Kraków, Kraków, Poland, pp. 145-164.

Wyźga, B., Zawiejska, J., Radecki-Pawlik, A., Hajdukiewicz, H., 2012. Environmental change, hydromorphological reference conditions and the restoration of Polish Carpathian rivers. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*, DOI: 10.1002/esp.3273.

## **Appendix 1. Evaluation Form for Confined Channels**



# Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

## EVALUATION FORMS FOR CONFINED CHANNELS

Version 2 - October 2016

### GENERALITY

Date \_\_\_\_\_ Operators \_\_\_\_\_  
 Catchment \_\_\_\_\_ Stream/river \_\_\_\_\_  
 Upstream limit \_\_\_\_\_ Downstream limit \_\_\_\_\_  
 Segment code \_\_\_\_\_ Reach Code \_\_\_\_\_ Reach length (m) \_\_\_\_\_

### DELINEATION OF SPATIAL UNITS

#### 1. Physiographic setting

Physiographic context \_\_\_\_\_ M=Mountains, H=Hills Landscape unit \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2. Confinement

Confinement degree (%) \_\_\_\_\_ >90, 10-90 Confinement index \_\_\_\_\_ (1-1.5)

#### 3. Channel morphology

Aerial photo or satellite image \_\_\_\_\_ (name, year)  
 Braiding index \_\_\_\_\_ 1-1.5, >1.5 Anabranching index \_\_\_\_\_ 1-1.5, >1.5  
 River Type (BRT, Basic River Typology) \_\_\_\_\_ S-T=Single-thread, W= Wandering, B= Braided, A= Anabranching

#### 4. Other elements for reach delineation

Upstream \_\_\_\_\_ Downstream \_\_\_\_\_  
 change in geomorphic units, bed slope discontinuity, tributary, dam, artificial elements, change in confinement  
 and/or size of the floodplain, changes in grain size, other (specify) \_\_\_\_\_

### FURTHER CHARACTERIZATION

Drainage area (at the downstream limit) (km<sup>2</sup>) \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mean bed slope, S \_\_\_\_\_ Mean channel width, W (m) \_\_\_\_\_  
 Bed sediment (dominant) \_\_\_\_\_ C=Clay, Si=Silt, Sa=Sand, G=Gravel, C=Cobbles, B=Boulders  
 Bed configuration \_\_\_\_\_ BR=bedrock, C=Cascade, SP=Step Pool, PB=Plane bed, RP=Riffle Pool, DR=Dune ripple  
 A= Artificial, NC= not classified (high depth or strong alteration)  
 River Type (ERT, Extended River Typology) \_\_\_\_\_ from 0 to 22 (GF= Groundwater-Fed)  
 Unit stream power ( $\omega=\gamma QS/W$ ) (when available) \_\_\_\_\_  $\leq 10$ , >10 W m<sup>-1</sup> Energy setting \_\_\_\_\_ LE=Low Energy

#### Additional available data / information

Sediment size, D<sub>50</sub> (mm) \_\_\_\_\_ Unit \_\_\_\_\_ Be=Bed, Ba=Bar (SU=surface layer, SUB=sublayer)  
 Discharges \_\_\_\_\_ M=measured, E=estimated, NA=not available  
 Gauging station (if M) \_\_\_\_\_ Mean annual discharge (m<sup>3</sup>/s) \_\_\_\_\_ Q<sub>1.5</sub> or Q<sub>2</sub> (m<sup>3</sup>/s) \_\_\_\_\_  
 Maximum discharges (indicate year and Q when known) \_\_\_\_\_

### GEOMORPHOLOGICAL FUNCTIONALITY

#### Continuity

		part.	prog.	conf.
<b>F1</b>	<b>Longitudinal continuity in sediment and wood flux</b>			
A	Absence of alteration in the continuity of sediment and wood	0		
B	Slight alteration (obstacles to the flux but with no interception)	3		
C	Strong alteration (discontinuity of channel forms and interception of sediment and wood)	5		

<b>F3</b>	<b>Hillslope - river corridor connectivity</b>			
A	Full connectivity between hillslopes and river corridor (>90%)	0		
B	Connectivity for a significant portion of the reach (33+90%)	3		
C	Connectivity for a small portion of the reach (≤33%)	5		

part.: partial score (to circle)

prog.: MQI progressive score

conf.: confidence level in the answer, with M=Medium, L=Low (High is omitted)

confidence level between A and B

confidence level between B and C

## Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

### Morphology

#### Morphological pattern

F6 Bed configuration - valley slope <span style="float: right;">(applied to Single-thread channels)</span>		
A	Bed forms consistent with the mean valley slope or not consistent for ≤33% of the reach	0
B	Bed forms not consistent with the mean valley slope for 33-66% of the reach	3
C	Alteration of bed forms for >66% of the reach	5

Not evaluated for ERT types from 1 to 3, and for deep streams when it is not possible to observe the channel bed

F7 Planform pattern <span style="float: right;">(applied to Multi-thread or Wandering channels)</span>		
A	Absence (≤5%) of alteration of the natural heterogeneity of geomorphic units and channel width	0
B	Alterations for a limited portion of the reach (≤33%)	3
C	Consistent alterations for a significant portion of the reach (>33%)	5

#### Cross-section configuration

F9 Variability of the cross-section		
A	Absence (≤5%) of alteration of the cross-section natural heterogeneity (channel depth/velocity)	0
B	Presence of alteration (cross-section homogeneity) for a limited portion of the reach (≤33%)	3
C	Presence of alteration (cross-section homogeneity) for a significant portion of the reach (>33%)	5

#### Bed structure and substrate

F10 Structure of the channel bed		
A	Natural heterogeneity of bed sediments and no significant clogging	0
B	Evident clogging for ≤50% of the reach	2
C1	Evident clogging for >50% of the reach or burial (≤50%)	5
C2	Evident burial (>50%) or alteration by bed revetment (>33% of the reach)	6

Not evaluated for ERT types from 1 to 3, and for deep streams when it is not possible to observe the channel bed

F11 Presence of in-channel large wood		
A	Significant presence of large wood along the whole reach (or "wood transport" reach)	0
B	Negligible presence of large wood for ≤50% of the reach	2
C	Negligible presence of large wood for >50% of the reach	3

Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)

#### Vegetation in the fluvial corridor

F12 Width of functional vegetation		
A	High width of functional vegetation	0
B	Medium width of functional vegetation	2
C	Low width of functional vegetation	3

Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)

## Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

<b>F13</b>	<b>Linear extension of functional vegetation</b>		
A	Linear extension of functional vegetation >90% of maximum available length	0	
B	Linear extension of functional vegetation 33+90% of maximum available length	3	
C	Linear extension of functional vegetation ≤33% of maximum available length	5	

Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)

### ARTIFICIALITY

#### Upstream alteration of longitudinal continuity

part.	prog.	conf.

<b>A1</b>	<b>Upstream alteration of flows</b>		
A	No significant alteration (≤10%) of channel-forming discharges and with return interval>10 years	0	
B	Significant alteration (>10%) of discharges with return interval>10 years or release of increased low flows downstream dams during dry seasons	3	
C	Significant alteration (>10%) of channel-forming discharges	6	

<b>A1<sub>H</sub></b>	<b>Upstream alteration of flows without potentially relevant effects on channel morphology</b>		
A	Absence of any type of structure altering flow discharges (dams or other abstractions)	0	
B	Presence in the catchment of one or more structures altering flow discharges	8	
C	Reach located between abstraction and restitution section of hydropower plant and/or reach immediately downstream of a hydropower reservoir	16	

Evaluated for the application of the HMQI

<b>A2</b>	<b>Upstream alteration of sediment discharges</b>		
A	Absence or negligible presence of structures for the interception of sediment fluxes (dams for drainage area ≤5% and/or check dams/abstraction weirs for drainage area ≤33%)	0	
B1	Dams (area 5-33%) and/or check dams/weirs with total bedload interception (area 33-66%) and/or check dams/weirs with partial interception (area >66%)	3	
B2	Dams (drainage area 33-66%) and/or check dams/weirs with total bedload interception	6	
C1	Dams for drainage area >66%	9	
C2	Dam at the upstream boundary of the reach	12	

#### Alteration of longitudinal continuity in the reach

<b>A3</b>	<b>Alteration of flows in the reach</b>		
A	No significant alteration (≤10%) of channel-forming discharges and with return interval>10 years	0	
B	Significant alteration (>10%) of discharges with return interval>10 years	3	
C	Significant alteration (>10%) of channel-forming discharges	6	

<b>A4</b>	<b>Alteration of sediment discharge in the reach</b>		
A	Absence of structures for the interception of sediment fluxes (dams, check dams, abstraction weirs)	0	
B	Channels with S≤1%: consolidation check dams and/or abstraction weirs ≤1 every 1000 m Steep channels (S>1%): consolidation check dams ≤1 every 200 m and/or open check dams	4	
C	Channels with S≤1%: consolidation check dams and/or abstraction weirs >1 every 1000 m Steep channels (S>1%): consolidation check dams >1 every 200 m and/or retention check dams or presence of a dam or artificial reservoir at the downstream boundary (any bed slope)	6	

Where transversal structures, including bed sills and ramps (see A9), are >1 every d1, add 6

Where transversal structures, including bed sills and ramps (see A9), are >1 every d2, add 12

where d1=150 m and d2=100 m in steep channels, or d1=750 m and d2=500 m in channels with S≤1%

## Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

A5 Crossing structures			
A	Absence of crossing structures (bridges, fords, culverts)	0	
B	Presence of some crossing structure ( $\leq 1$ every 1000 m in average in the reach)	2	
C	Presence of many crossing structure ( $> 1$ every 1000 m in average in the reach)	3	

### Alteration of lateral continuity

A6 Bank protections			
A	Absence or localized presence of bank protections ( $\leq 5\%$ total length of the banks)	0	
B	Presence of protections for $\leq 33\%$ total length of the banks (sum of both banks)	3	
C	Presence of protections for $> 33\%$ total length of the banks (sum of both banks)	6	
		For a high density of bank protection ( $> 50\%$ ) add	6
		For an extremely high density of bank protection ( $> 80\%$ ) add	12

### Alteration of channel morphology and/or substrate

A9 Other bed stabilization structures			
A	Absence of structures (bed sills/ramps) and revetments	0	
B	Sills or ramps ( $\leq 1$ every $d$ ) and/or revetments $\leq 25\%$ permeable and/or $\leq 15\%$ impermeable	3	
C1	Sills or ramps ( $> 1$ every $d$ ) and/or revetments $\leq 50\%$ permeable and/or $\leq 33\%$ impermeable	6	
C2	Revetments $> 50\%$ permeable and/or $> 33\%$ impermeable	8	
		<i>d = 200 m in steep channels (<math>S &gt; 1\%</math>); <math>d = 1000</math> m in channels with <math>S \leq 1\%</math></i>	
		For a high density of bed revetment (impermeable $> 50\%$ or permeable $> 80\%$ ) add	6
		For an extremely high density of bed revetment (impermeable $> 50\%$ or permeable $> 66\%$ ) add	12

### Intervention of maintenance and removal

A10 Sediment removal			
A	Absence of significant sediment removal activities during the last 20 years	0	
B	Localized sediment removal activities during the last 20 years	3	
C	Widespread sediment removal activities during the last 20 years	6	

Not evaluated in the case of ERT type 1

A11 Wood removal			
A	Absence of removal of woody material at least during the last 20 years	0	
B	Partial removal of woody material during the last 20 years	2	
C	Total removal of woody material during the last 20 years	5	

Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)

A12 Vegetation management			
A	No cutting interventions on riparian vegetation (last 20 years) and aquatic vegetation (last 5 years)	0	
B	Selective cuts and/or clear cuts of riparian vegetation $\leq 50\%$ of the reach and partial or no cutting of aquatic vegetation, or no cutting of riparian but partial or total cutting of aquatic vegetation	2	
C	Clear cuts of riparian vegetation $> 50\%$ of the reach, or selective cuts and/or clear cuts of riparian vegetation $\leq 50\%$ of the reach but total cutting of aquatic vegetation	5	

Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)

## Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

### CHANNEL ADJUSTMENTS

		part.	prog.	conf.
<b>CA1</b>	<b>Adjustments in channel pattern</b>			
A	Absence of change of channel pattern since 1930s - 1960s	0		
B	Change of channel pattern since 1930s - 1960s	3		

*Not evaluated in the case of small streams where resolution of aerial photos is insufficient*

<b>CA2</b>	<b>Adjustments in channel width</b>			
A	Absent or limited changes in channel width ( $\leq 15\%$ ) since 1930s - 1960s	0		
B	Changes in channel width $> 15\%$ since 1930s - 1960s	3		

*Not evaluated in the case of small streams where resolution of aerial photos is insufficient*

<b>CA3</b>	<b>Bed-level adjustments</b>			
A	Negligible bed-level changes ( $\leq 0.5$ m)	0		
B	Limited to moderate bed-level changes ( $0.5 \div 3$ m)	4		
C	Intense bed-level changes ( $> 3$ m)	8		

*Not evaluated in the case of absolute lack of data, information and field evidences*

**Total deviation (MQI):**

**Stot =**

**Maximum deviation:**

**Smax = 119 - Sna =**

*where Sna = sum of maximum scores for those indicators that have not been applied*

**Morphological Alteration Index:**

**MAI = Stot / Smax =**   
*if Stot > Smax it is assumed MAI = 1*

**Morphological Quality Index:**

**MQI = 1 - MAI =**

**Morphological Quality class of the reach**

$0 \leq MQI < 0.3$ : Very Poor or Bad;  $0.3 \leq MQI < 0.5$ : Poor;  $0.5 \leq MQI < 0.7$ : Moderate;  
 $0.7 \leq MQI < 0.85$ : Good;  $0.85 \leq MQI \leq 1.0$ : Very Good or High

**Total deviation (HMQI):**

**Stot + S(A1<sub>μ</sub>) =**

**Hydro-Morphological Quality Index:**

**HMQI = 1 - Stot + S(A1<sub>μ</sub>) / Smax =**

**Hydro-Morphological Quality class of the reach**

$0 \leq HMQI < 0.3$ : Very Poor or Bad;  $0.3 \leq HMQI < 0.5$ : Poor;  $0.5 \leq HMQI < 0.7$ : Moderate;  
 $0.7 \leq HMQI < 0.85$ : Good;  $0.85 \leq HMQI \leq 1.0$ : Very Good or High

## **Appendix 2. Evaluation Form for Partly Confined or Unconfined Channels**

# Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

## EVALUATION FORMS FOR PARTLY CONFINED AND UNCONFINED CHANNELS

Version 2 - October 2016

### GENERALITY

Date \_\_\_\_\_ Operators \_\_\_\_\_  
 Catchment \_\_\_\_\_ Stream/river \_\_\_\_\_  
 Upstream limit \_\_\_\_\_ Downstream limit \_\_\_\_\_  
 Segment code \_\_\_\_\_ Reach Code \_\_\_\_\_ Reach length (m) \_\_\_\_\_

### DELINEATION OF SPATIAL UNITS

#### 1. Physiographic setting

Physiographic context \_\_\_\_\_ *M=Mountains, H=Hills, P=Plain* Landscape unit \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2. Confinement

Confinement degree (%) \_\_\_\_\_ >90, 10-90, ≤10  
 Confinement index \_\_\_\_\_ 1-1.5, 1.5-*n*, >*n* (*n*=5 single-thread or anabranching; *n*=2 braided or wandering)  
 Confinement class \_\_\_\_\_ *PC*=Partly confined, *U*=Unconfined

#### 3. Channel morphology

Aerial photo or satellite image \_\_\_\_\_ (name, year)  
 Sinuosity index \_\_\_\_\_ 1-1.05, 1.05-1.5, >1.5  
 Braiding index \_\_\_\_\_ 1-1.5, >1.5 Anabranching index \_\_\_\_\_ 1-1.5, >1.5  
 River Type (*BRT*, Basic River Typology) \_\_\_\_\_ *ST*=Straight, *S*=Sinuous, *M*=Meandering,  
*W*=Wandering, *B*=Braided, *A*=Anabranching

#### 4. Other elements for reach delineation

Upstream \_\_\_\_\_ Downstream \_\_\_\_\_  
 change in geomorphic units, bed slope discontinuity, tributary, dam, artificial elements, change in confinement  
 and/or size of the floodplain, changes in grain size, other (specify) \_\_\_\_\_

### FURTHER CHARACTERIZATION

Drainage area (at the downstream limit) (km<sup>2</sup>) \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mean bed slope, *S* \_\_\_\_\_ Mean channel width, *W* (m) \_\_\_\_\_  
 Bed sediment (dominant) \_\_\_\_\_ *C*=Clay, *Si*=Silt, *Sa*=Sand, *G*=Gravel, *C*=Cobbles, *B*=Boulders  
 Bed configuration \_\_\_\_\_ *BR*=bedrock, *C*=Cascade, *SP*=Step Pool, *PB*=Plane bed, *RP*=Riffle Pool, *DR*=Dune ripple  
*A*=Artificial, *NC*=not classified (high depth or strong alteration)  
 River Type (*ERT*, Extended River Typology) \_\_\_\_\_ from 0 to 22 (*GF*=Groundwater-Fed)  
 Unit stream power ( $\omega=\gamma Q S/W$ ) (when available) \_\_\_\_\_ ≤10, >10 W m<sup>-1</sup> Energy setting \_\_\_\_\_ *LE*=Low Energy

#### Additional available data / information

Sediment size, *D*<sub>50</sub> (mm) \_\_\_\_\_ Unit \_\_\_\_\_ *Be*=Bed, *Ba*=Bar (*SU*=surface layer, *SUB*=sublayer)  
 Discharges \_\_\_\_\_ *M*=measured, *E*=estimated, *NA*=not available  
 Gauging station (if *M*) \_\_\_\_\_ Mean annual discharge (m<sup>3</sup>/s) \_\_\_\_\_ *Q*<sub>1.5</sub> or *Q*<sub>2</sub> (m<sup>3</sup>/s) \_\_\_\_\_  
 Maximum discharges (indicate year and *Q* when known) \_\_\_\_\_

### GEOMORPHOLOGICAL FUNCTIONALITY

#### Continuity

		part.	prog.	conf.
<b>F1</b>	<b>Longitudinal continuity in sediment and wood flux</b>			
A	Absence of alteration in the continuity of sediment and wood	0		
B	Slight alteration (obstacles to the flux but with no interception)	3		
C	Strong alteration (discontinuity of channel forms and interception of sediment and wood)	5		

#### F2 Presence of a modern floodplain

A	Presence of a continuous (>66% of the reach) and wide floodplain	0		
B1	Presence of a discontinuous (10÷66%) but wide floodplain or >66% but narrow	2		
B2	Presence of a discontinuous (10÷66%) and narrow floodplain	3		
C	Absence of a floodplain or negligible presence (≤10% of any width)	5		

Not evaluated in the case of mountain streams along steep (>3%) alluvial fans

part.: partial score (to circle)

prog.: MQI progressive score

confidence level between A and B

conf: confidence level in the answer, with *M*=Medium, *L*=Low (*High* is omitted)

confidence level between B and C



## Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

<b>F4</b>	<b>Processes of bank retreat</b>		
A	Bank erosion occurs for >10% and is distributed along >33% of the reach	0	
B	Bank erosion occurs for ≤10%, or for >10% but is concentrated along ≤33% of the reach or significant presence (>25%) of eroding banks by mass failures	2	
C	Complete absence (≤2%) or widespread presence (>50%) of eroding banks by mass failures	3	

*Not evaluated in the case of Low Energy ERT types from 17 to 22 and Groundwater-Fed streams*

<b>F5</b>	<b>Presence of a potentially erodible corridor</b>		
A	Presence of a wide potentially erodible corridor (EC) for a length >66% of the reach	0	
B	Presence of a potentially EC of any width for 33-66% of the reach or for >66% but narrow	2	
C	Presence of a potentially EC of any width for ≤33% of the reach	3	

### Morphology

#### Morphological pattern

<b>F7</b>	<b>Planform pattern</b>		
A	Absence (<5%) of alteration of the natural heterogeneity of geomorphic units and channel width	0	
B	Alterations for a limited portion of the reach (≤33%)	3	
C	Consistent alterations for a significant portion of the reach (>33%)	5	

<b>F8</b>	<b>Presence of typical fluvial landforms in the floodplain</b>		
A	Presence of floodplain landforms (oxbow lakes, secondary channels, etc.)	0	
B	Presence of traces of landforms (abandoned during the last decades) but with possible reactivation	2	
C	Complete absence of floodplain landforms	3	

#### Cross-section configuration

<b>F9</b>	<b>Variability of the cross-section</b>		
A	Absence (≤5%) of alteration of the cross-section natural heterogeneity (channel depth)	0	
B	Presence of alteration (cross-section homogeneity) for a limited portion of the reach (≤33%)	3	
C	Presence of alteration (cross-section homogeneity) for a significant portion of the reach (>33%)	5	

#### Bed structure and substrate

<b>F10</b>	<b>Structure of the channel bed</b>		
A	Natural heterogeneity of bed sediments and no significant armouring, clogging or burial	0	
B	Evident armouring or clogging for ≤50% of the reach	2	
C1	Evident armouring or clogging (>50%), or burial (≤50%), or occasional substrate outcrops	5	
C2	Evident burial (>50%), or substrate outcrops or alteration by bed revetments (>33% of the reach)	6	

*Not evaluated for deep rivers when it is not possible to observe the channel bed*

<b>F11</b>	<b>Presence of in-channel large wood</b>		
A	Significant presence of large wood along the whole reach (or "wood transport" reach)	0	
B	Negligible presence of large wood for ≤50% of the reach	2	
C	Negligible presence of large wood for >50% of the reach	3	

*Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)*

### Vegetation in the fluvial corridor

<b>F12</b>	<b>Width of functional vegetation</b>		
A	High width of functional vegetation	0	
B	Medium width of functional vegetation	2	
C	Low width of functional vegetation	3	

*Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)*

## Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

<b>F13</b>	<b>Linear extension of functional vegetation</b>		
A	Linear extension of functional vegetation >90% of maximum available length	0	
B	Linear extension of functional vegetation 33-90% of maximum available length	3	
C	Linear extension of functional vegetation ≤33% of maximum available length	5	

*Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)*

### ARTIFICIALITY

#### Upstream alteration of longitudinal continuity

part. prog. conf.

<b>A1<sub>M</sub></b>	<b>Upstream alteration of flows with potentially relevant effects on channel morphology</b>		
A	No significant alteration (≤10%) of channel-forming discharges and with return interval>10 years	0	
B	Significant alteration (>10%) of discharges with return interval>10 years or release of increased low flows downstream dams during dry seasons	3	
C	Significant alteration (>10%) of channel-forming discharges	6	

<b>A1<sub>H</sub></b>	<b>Upstream alteration of flows without potentially relevant effects on channel morphology</b>		
A	Absence of any type of structure altering flow discharges (dams or other abstractions)	0	
B	Presence in the catchment of one or more structures altering flow discharges	11	
C	Reach located between abstraction and restitution section of hydropower plant and/or reach immediately downstream of a hydropower reservoir	22	

*Evaluated for the application of the HMQI*

<b>A2</b>	<b>Upstream alteration of sediment discharges</b>		
A	Absence or negligible presence of structures for the interception of sediment fluxes (dams for drainage area ≤5% and/or check dams/abstraction weirs for drainage area ≤33%)	0	
B1	Dams (area 5-33%) and/or check dams/weirs with total bedload interception (area 33-66%) and/or check dams/weirs with partial interception (area >66%)	3	
B2	Dams (drainage area 33-66%) and/or check dams/weirs with total bedload interception (drainage area >66% or at the upstream boundary)	6	
C1	Dams for drainage area >66%	9	
C2	Dam at the upstream boundary of the reach	12	

#### Alteration of longitudinal continuity in the reach

<b>A3</b>	<b>Alteration of flows in the reach</b>		
A	No significant alteration (≤10%) of channel-forming discharges and with return interval>10 years	0	
B	Significant alteration (>10%) of discharges with return interval>10 years	3	
C	Significant alteration (>10%) of channel-forming discharges	6	

<b>A4</b>	<b>Alteration of sediment discharge in the reach</b>		
A	Absence of structures for the interception of sediment fluxes (dams, check dams, abstraction weirs)	0	
B	Channels with S≤1%: consolidation check dams and/or abstraction weirs ≤1 every 1000 m Steep channels (S>1%): consolidation check dams ≤1 every 200 m and/or open check dams	4	
C	Channels with S≤1%: consolidation check dams and/or abstraction weirs >1 every 1000 m Steep channels (S>1%): consolidation check dams >1 every 200 m and/or retention check dams or presence of a dam or artificial reservoir at the downstream boundary (any bed slope)	6	

*Where transversal structures, including bed sills and ramps (see A9), are >1 every d1, add 6*

*Where transversal structures, including bed sills and ramps (see A9), are >1 every d2, add 12*

*where d1=150 m and d2=100 m in steep channels, or d1=750 m and d2=500 m in channels with S≤1%*

## Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

A5 Crossing structures			
A	Absence of crossing structures (bridges, fords, culverts)	0	
B	Presence of some crossing structures ( $\leq 1$ every 1000 m in average in the reach)	2	
C	Presence of many crossing structures ( $> 1$ every 1000 m in average in the reach)	3	

### Alteration of lateral continuity

A6 Bank protections			
A	Absence or localized presence of bank protections ( $\leq 5\%$ total length of the banks)	0	
B	Presence of protections for $\leq 33\%$ total length of the banks (sum of both banks)	3	
C	Presence of protections for $> 33\%$ total length of the banks (sum of both banks)	6	
		For a high density of bank protection ( $> 50\%$ ) add	6
		For an extremely high density of bank protection ( $> 80\%$ ) add	12

A7 Artificial levees			
A	Absent or set-back levees, or presence of close and/or bank-edge levees $\leq 5\%$ bank length	0	
B	Bank-edge levees $\leq 50\%$ , or $\leq 33\%$ in case of total of close and/or bank edge $> 90\%$	3	
C	Bank-edge levees $> 50\%$ , or $> 33\%$ in case of total of close and/or bank edge $> 90\%$	6	
		For a high density of bank-edge levees ( $> 66\%$ ) add	6
		For an extremely high density of bank-edge levees ( $> 80\%$ ) add	12

### Alteration of channel morphology and/or substrate

A8 Artificial changes of river course			
A	Absence of artificial changes of river course in the past (meanders cut-off, channel diversions, etc.)	0	
B	Presence of changes of river course for $\leq 10\%$ of the reach length	2	
C	Presence of changes of river course for $> 10\%$ of the reach length	3	
		In case of historical drainage and dredged works for $> 50\%$ of the reach, add	6
		In case of historical drainage and dredged works for $> 80\%$ of the reach, add (when an additional score for A6 and/or A7 is not already applied)	12

A9 Other bed stabilization structures			
A	Absence of structures (bed sills/ramps) and revetments	0	
B	Sills or ramps ( $\leq 1$ every $d$ ) and/or revetments $\leq 25\%$ permeable and/or $\leq 15\%$ impermeable	3	
C1	Sills or ramps ( $> 1$ every $d$ ) and/or revetments $\leq 50\%$ permeable and/or $\leq 33\%$ impermeable	6	
C2	Revetments $> 50\%$ permeable and/or $> 33\%$ impermeable	8	

$d = 200$  m in steep channels ( $S > 1\%$ );  $d = 1000$  m in channels with  $S \leq 1\%$

For a high density of bed revetment (impermeable  $> 50\%$  or permeable  $> 80\%$ ) add 6  
For an extremely high density of bed revetment (impermeable  $> 80\%$ ) add 12

### Intervention of maintenance and removal

A10 Sediment removal			
A	Absence of recent (last 20 years) and past (last 100 years) significant sediment removal activities	0	
B1	Sediment removal activity in the past (last 100 years) but absent during last 20 years	3	
B2	Recent sediment removal activity (last 20 years) but absent in the past (last 100 years)	4	
C	Sediment removal activity either in the past (last 100 years) and during last 20 years	6	

A11 Wood removal			
A	Absence of removal of woody material at least during the last 20 years	0	
B	Partial removal of woody material during the last 20 years	2	
C	Total removal of woody material during the last 20 years	5	

Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)

## Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

A12 Vegetation management		
A	No cutting interventions on riparian vegetation (last 20 years) and aquatic vegetation (last 5 years)	0
B	Selective cuts and/or clear cuts of riparian vegetation ≤50% of the reach and partial or no cutting of aquatic vegetation, or no cutting of riparian but partial or total cutting of aquatic vegetation	2
C	Clear cuts of riparian vegetation >50% of the reach, or selective cuts and/or clear cuts of riparian vegetation ≤50% of the reach but total cutting of aquatic vegetation	5

Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)

### CHANNEL ADJUSTMENTS

CA1 Adjustments in channel pattern			part.	prog.	conf.
A	Absence of changes of channel pattern since 1930s - 1960s	0			
B	Change to a similar channel pattern since 1930s - 1960s	3			
C	Change to a different channel pattern since 1930s - 1960s	6			

Not evaluated in the case of small streams where resolution of aerial photos is insufficient

CA2 Adjustments in channel width		
A	Absent or limited changes (≤15%) since 1930s - 1960s	0
B	Moderate changes (15÷35%) since 1930s - 1960s	3
C	Intense changes (>35%) since 1930s - 1960s	6

Not evaluated in the case of small streams where resolution of aerial photos is insufficient

CA3 Bed-level adjustments		
A	Negligible bed-level changes (≤0.5 m)	0
B	Limited to moderate bed-level changes (0.5÷3 m)	4
C1	Intense bed-level changes (>3 m)	8
C2	Very intense bed-level changes (>6 m)	12

Not evaluated in the case of absolute lack of data, information and field evidences

**Total deviation (MQI):**  $Stot =$    
**Maximum deviation:**  $Smax = 142 - Sna =$    
*where Sna = sum of maximum scores for those indicators that have not been applied*  
**Morphological Alteration Index:**  $MAI = Stot / Smax =$    
*if Stot>Smax it is assumed MAI=1*  
**Morphological Quality Index:**  $MQI = 1 - MAI =$    
**Morphological Quality class of the reach**   
 $0 \leq MQI < 0.3$ : Very Poor or Bad;  $0.3 \leq MQI < 0.5$ : Poor;  $0.5 \leq MQI < 0.7$ : Moderate;  
 $0.7 \leq MQI < 0.85$ : Good;  $0.85 \leq MQI \leq 1.0$ : Very Good or High

**Total deviation (HMQI):**  $Stot + S(A1_H) =$    
**Hydro-Morphological Quality Index:**  $HMQI = 1 - Stot + S(A1_H) / Smax =$    
**Hydro-Morphological Quality class of the reach**   
 $0 \leq HMQI < 0.3$ : Very Poor or Bad;  $0.3 \leq HMQI < 0.5$ : Poor;  $0.5 \leq HMQI < 0.7$ : Moderate;  
 $0.7 \leq HMQI < 0.85$ : Good;  $0.85 \leq HMQI \leq 1.0$ : Very Good or High

## **Appendix 3. Guide to the Compilation of the Evaluation Forms**

### A3.1 Introduction

This Guide provides detailed instructions and support for the compilation of the *MQI* evaluation forms. For each indicator, an extended version of the possible answers is reported, including:

Spatial scale (longitudinal and lateral);

Type of measurements (e.g. field survey, remote sensing, or other sources of information);

- Confinement type (confined, partly confined or unconfined);
- Range of application (for those indicators that are not applied in specific cases).

Concerning the longitudinal **spatial scale**, the following general indications are provided. In the case of indicators assessed by remote sensing, the longitudinal spatial scale corresponds to the entire reach. In the case of indicators which need field survey observation/measurement, the assessment is focussed on the 'site' scale (i.e., one or preferably more sub-reaches selected as the most representative of the reach), although additional checks along other sites should be considered (e.g. for indicators which need the definition of the lateral extent and/or continuity along the reach). Finally, artificial elements must be recognised and assessed along the whole reach.

### A3.2 Generality and delineation of spatial units

The first part of the evaluation form is dedicated to some general information, including the date of the field survey (although the complete compilation of the evaluation form requires a preparation phase and a conclusion phase of the measurements after the field visit), and the name(s) of the operators. Then the name of the catchment and of the stream/river is indicated. The upstream and downstream limits of the reach must be clearly defined (e.g. name of a tributary, if this represents a limit, or planimetric coordinates) and the identification code of the segment and reach, and the reach length need to be recorded. In the case of anabranching channels, the reach length is calculated as the average of the single channels. In those indicators which refer to the percentage of reach length, this is intended as the percentage of the total length (i.e. sum of all individual channels).

The following part of the form is dedicated to all information and measurements made during the four steps of the general setting and initial segmentation. During *step 1*, the **physiographic setting** (physiographic context and landscape unit) is specified. During *step 2*, the details for the classification of **confinement** are provided. Note that, as for all the indices reported in this section, the operator can report the precise value of the index, or only specify the class (e.g. > 90%, 10÷90% or ≤ 10% for the confinement degree). *Step 3* is dedicated to **channel morphology**. First of all, the name of the image (aerial photograph or satellite image) used as a reference for all observations aimed at morphological classification is indicated. Then, the indices useful to define the channel pattern (sinuosity, braiding, and anabranching indices) are reported, and the resulting Basic River Type (BRT) is defined. In *step 4*, information regarding **other elements for reach delineation** is reported.

There follows a section concerning the **further characterization**, based on the additional information collected (mostly in the field) at the start of the MQI assessment. The first set of information concerns the following features: (i) drainage area; (ii) dominant bed sediment; (iii) mean bed slope; (iv) mean channel width; (v) bed configuration. In the case of anabranching rivers, the mean bed slope is calculated as the average of the bed slopes of the single threads, whereas the channel width is calculated as the sum of the widths of all

threads. Based on the dominant bed sediment, the Extended River Type (ERT) and the energy setting (low-energy stream reach) are defined. Finally, additional data/information concerning sediment size and discharge, can be also included, when available.

### **A3.3 Geomorphological Functionality** Continuity

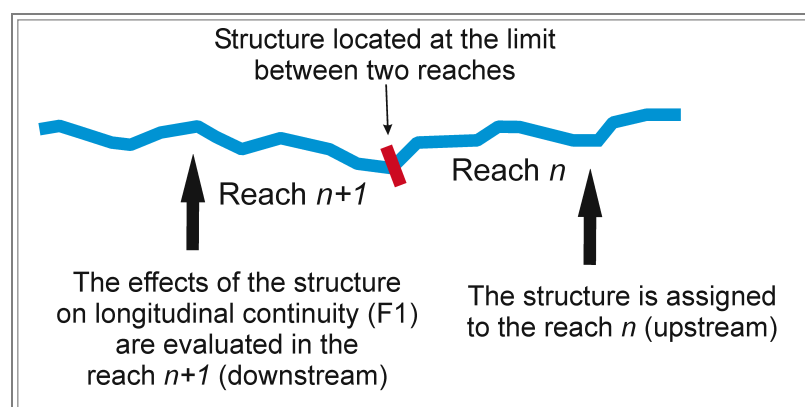
#### **A3.3.1 F1: Longitudinal continuity in sediment and wood flux**

##### **DESCRIPTION**

This indicator evaluates whether the longitudinal continuity of sediment and wood material is altered by human structures that intercept or create obstacles to their flow (discontinuities due to natural factors, such as rock outcroppings, lakes or landslide dams are not considered).

Spatial scale	
<b>Longitudinal:</b> Site/Reach	<b>Lateral:</b> Channel
<b>Measurements:</b> Remote sensing and field survey	

The assessment does not depend on the number of alterations, but on their relevance: just one structure can cause a complete alteration of the flux, whereas many structures may have no significant effects (the number of structures is accounted for in the indicators of Artificiality). The main artificial structures are dams, check dams, and weirs. Other alterations can be due to crossing structures (bridges, fords) or also groynes. In the case of a **structure located at the upstream reach limit, this is conventionally assigned to the upstream reach** (see indicators of Artificiality), **but the effects on the longitudinal continuity are considered for the downstream reach** (Figure 1). Therefore, the effect of a structure located at the downstream limit is not evaluated for that reach, but for the one downstream.



**Figure A3. 1 Longitudinal continuity in sediment and wood flux.**

**Rule of assignment of a transversal structure located at the limit between two reaches, and its effects on longitudinal continuity.**

The assessment is first based on remote sensing, noting whether existing structures create a clear differentiation in the presence and extension of depositional forms upstream and downstream from the structure. Field checks are then required to better assess the impact of existing structures (e.g. to verify whether the structure causes a selective flux of sediment and wood).



## EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type	All typologies
<b>A</b>	Absence or very negligible presence of alterations in the continuity of sediment and wood flux, that is, there are no significant obstacles or interceptions to the free passage of solid material related to transversal and/or crossing structures (e.g. bridge with no piers or wide span, check dams or weirs completely filled and significant changes in depositional features and sediment size upstream and downstream the structure). In the case of presence of anabranches: absence or very negligible presence of alteration in all the anabranches, or slight alteration in a secondary anabranch.
<b>B</b>	Slight alteration in the continuity of sediment and wood flux, that is, most solid material is able to flow along the reach. Depositional forms may exist, indicating sedimentation of the coarsest fractions of bedload by crossing structures and/or groynes, but with no complete interception (e.g. bridges with narrow spans and piers, series of consolidation check dams in mountain areas, or check dams filled with coarse sediments but with significant difference in grain size from upstream to downstream); larger sizes of wood is held by bridge piers and/or open check dams. In the case of presence of anabranches: slight alteration in the main anabranch or in more anabranches (class <i>B</i> for the main anabranch or more anabranches), or strong alteration in a secondary anabranch or in more anabranches but absence of alteration in the remaining anabranches (i.e. combination of classes <i>A</i> and <i>C</i> ).
<b>C</b>	Strong alteration in the continuity of sediment and wood flux, that is, a strong discontinuity of depositional forms (sediments) exist in upstream and downstream structures because bedload is strongly intercepted (e.g. not filled weirs or check dams or, in mountain systems, check dams filled by fine sediments). In the case of presence of anabranches: strong alteration in all the existing anabranches or strong alteration in the main anabranch or in more anabranches and slight alteration in the remaining anabranches (i.e. combination of classes <i>B</i> and <i>C</i> ).

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

### Confined channels



Figure A3. 2 Longitudinal continuity in sediment and wood flux.

*Class A*: absence of discontinuities. *Class B*: up on the right, filled consolidation check dams; low on the left, open check dam. *Class C*: a check dam (arrow) with total interception represents a complete alteration of longitudinal continuity in the reach downstream from the check dam.



Figure A3.2 (continued) Longitudinal continuity in sediment and wood flux.

*Class A*: absence of discontinuities. *Class B*: up on the right, filled consolidation check dams; low on the left, open check dam. *Class C*: a check dam (arrow) with total interception represents a complete alteration of longitudinal continuity in the reach downstream from the check dam.

### Partly confined and unconfined channels

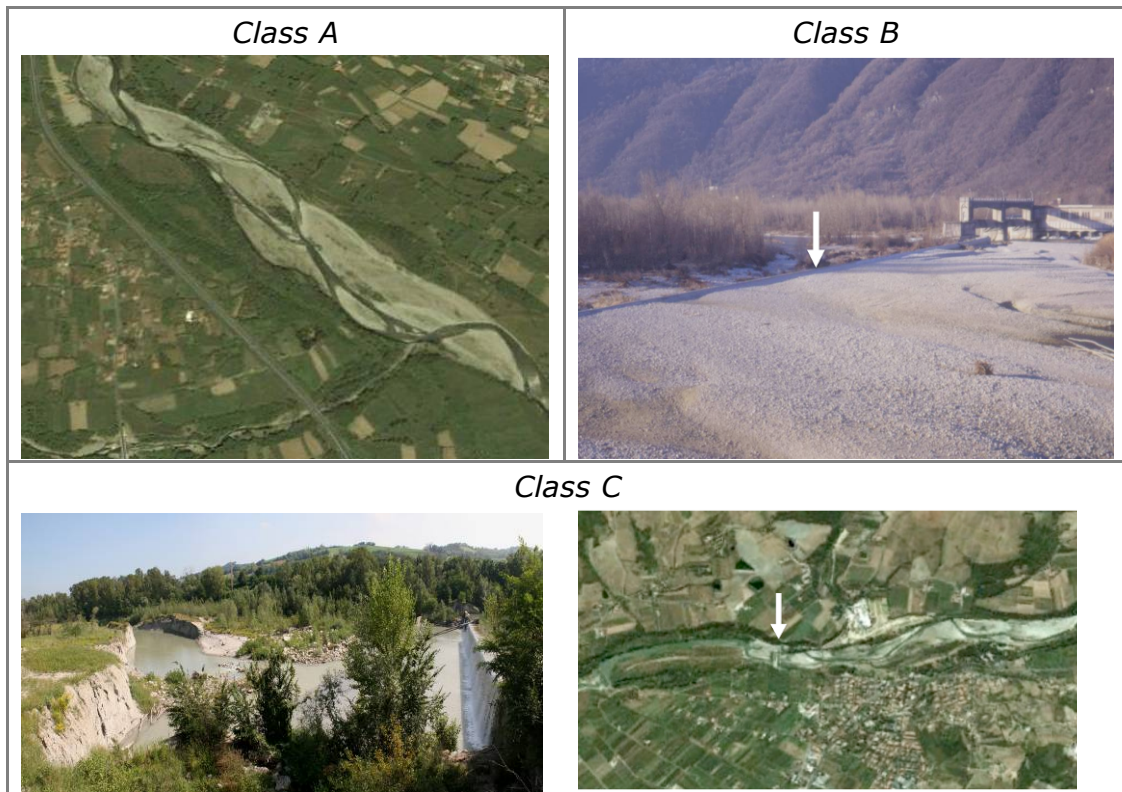


Figure A3.3 Longitudinal continuity in sediment and wood flux.

*Class A*: absence of discontinuities. *Class B*: filled check dam (arrow) altering the normal flux of sediment but without causing total interception and a discontinuity of forms (bars are observed either upstream and downstream). *Class C*: presence of a weir or check dam with total sediment interception resulting in a significant alteration of the reach immediately downstream (the river flows from right to left).

### A3.3.2 F2: Presence of a modern floodplain

#### DESCRIPTION

A river in dynamic equilibrium builds a modern floodplain that is generally inundated for discharges just exceeding channel-forming flows (return interval of 1÷3 years). The presence of a modern, frequently inundated floodplain promotes several important morphological, hydrological and ecological functions (attenuation of flood peak discharges, energy dissipation, fine sediment deposition, groundwater recharge, flood pulse, turnover of riparian habitats, etc.). **Bed incision** or artificial structures (levées) can alter this characteristic form and disconnect the floodplain from channel processes.

Lateral extension and longitudinal continuity of a modern floodplain is considered here as an indicator of existing lateral continuity of water and sediment fluxes.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Site/Reach	<i>Lateral</i> : Entire floodplain (including recent terraces)
<b>Measurements</b> : Remote sensing and field survey	

The floodplain is a typical geomorphic feature of **partly confined and unconfined channels**, therefore the indicator is not applied to confined channels (even though, in some cases, small floodplain areas can also be recognized along confined channels). The indicator is not applied in mountain areas along steep alluvial fans (> 3%), where the floodplain is difficult to identify even in natural conditions.

The absence (or limited presence) of a modern floodplain is a typical condition of **incised rivers**, therefore this indicator will need particular care for such cases. In the case of **rivers that are not incised**, the modern floodplain coincides with the overall floodplain; however in such cases this surface may be disconnected from the channel because of the presence of artificial levées, so their presence and distance from the channel need to be assessed.

#### GEOMORPHOLOGICAL DEFINITION OF MODERN FLOODPLAIN

A *modern floodplain* (or active or genetic floodplain) is an alluvial, flat surface adjacent to the river, created by lateral and vertical accretion during the present regime conditions. A river in dynamic equilibrium builds a modern floodplain that is generally inundated for discharges just exceeding channel-forming flows (return interval of 1÷3 years).

It is important to note that the '**modern**' floodplain evaluated by this indicator does not correspond to the **entire floodplain**, which is considered when evaluating the confinement, but in general is only a portion of that wider surface. This is clear in recently incised channels (i.e. last 100÷150 years, as is very common in most European countries), where the modern floodplain corresponds to recent surfaces formed after the last phase of incision. The modern floodplain is therefore distinguished from '**recent**' terraces (which correspond with abandoned or inactive floodplains), i.e. those surfaces affected by flooding of a larger return interval (generally >3 years), and which were often the modern floodplain **before** the incision. Accordingly, in the case of recent incision (the last 100÷150 years) the entire floodplain may include the modern floodplain and recent terraces.

However, in those cases where incision has been small (to the order of about 1 m or less), the portions of abandoned channel remain hydrologically identified with a modern

floodplain. In such cases, considering the practical difficulty of discriminating them in the field, these surfaces are evaluated as a modern floodplain in *F2*.

The **field identification of a modern floodplain** is based on a range of field evidence: (1) morphological and topographical continuity amongst channel depositional features (i.e. bars); (2) presence of fine sediment; (3) relatively dense vegetation cover, with strong presence of mature vegetation (i.e. trees); (4) evidence of flooding (e.g. woody debris). In some cases field evidence is poor or unrecognizable (e.g. farming fields, vegetated terraces).

Note that, according to the definition of confinement (see section 1.3.2), in Northern Europe it is possible that some floodplains are composed of **fluvio-glacial** or **fluvio-lacustrine deposits**, characterised by a large sediment size variability ranging from very fine (lacustrine deposits) to coarse (glacial or fluvio-glacial deposits). In these cases, the modern floodplain is still defined as a surface that is frequently inundated (return interval of 1÷3 years).

#### **METHODS FOR FLOODPLAIN DELINEATION AND FOR MEASURING CONTINUITY AND LATERAL EXTENT**

The identification and delineation of the modern floodplain is carried out by remote sensing and field survey. In some cases, additional methods can be used, including: (a) photo interpretation and/or DEMs, provided they are at a resolution sufficient for identifying differences in elevation between alluvial surfaces; (b) hydraulic modelling: the results of modelling normally used for the delimitation of flooding areas can support the delineation of the floodplain (i.e. for floods of low return period).

The evaluation of this indicator is based on the assessment of the modern floodplain **continuity**, defined as the percentage of reach length with presence of modern floodplain, even if only on one side of the channel, and **lateral extent**, i.e. its overall width (sum of both sides). Islands are included in the calculation of both modern floodplain continuity and lateral extent, except in the case of terraced islands (i.e. islands higher than the level of the modern floodplain). For anabranching channels, the continuity is assessed for all individual threads, and is calculated as a percentage of the sum of the length of all threads). Class A is associated with a lateral extent at least equal to  $nW$ , where  $W$  is the channel width,  $n = 2$  for single-thread or anabranching channels, and  $n = 1$  for braided or wandering channels. The lower value of  $n$  for braided and wandering channels is explained by the narrower channel area involved in lateral mobility and the relatively higher channel width compared to single-thread channels. In the case of **partly-confined channels**, where the modern floodplain occupies all of the available valley floor, the reach is in class A even if the lateral extent is lower than  $nW$ .

Measures of lateral extent from remote sensing (GIS) can be carried out in two ways: (1) in terms of an average along the reach of values measured on representative transects; (2) by calculating the ratio “floodplain area/channel area”. In some particular cases (i.e. problems in the delimitation of the modern floodplain area from remote sensing) the mean modern floodplain width can be measured in the field in representative sections.

#### **INTERACTION WITH OTHER INDICATORS**

*F2* interacts with several others indicators, mainly the following:  
(1) Vegetation in the fluvial corridor (*F12* and *F13*): in some cases, the vegetated fluvial corridor adjacent to the river channel corresponds to or includes the modern floodplain. Indeed, the vegetated surfaces are often at a lower level compared to agricultural lands,



whereas in other cases these vegetated areas correspond to terraces. For these reasons, the identification of the modern floodplain and its distinction from the vegetated fluvial corridor should be carried out in the field. Agricultural lands generally occupy terraces, except in the case where there is no bed incision.

(2) The presence of artificial levées (A7) automatically prevents the surfaces external to the levées from being modern floodplain, while the surface included between set-back levées and the bank edges can potentially be a modern floodplain or a terrace.

(3) Adjustments in channel width (CA2): previous portions of channel bed abandoned by narrowing, associated with limited or moderate bed incision, are likely to correspond to a modern floodplain.

(4) Vertical adjustments (CA3): incision causes the hydrological disconnection between the river channel and its floodplain. However, a new floodplain surface may develop after bed incision, and so vegetated surfaces adjacent to the stream could be a modern floodplain. However, if no incision has occurred, the modern floodplain often corresponds to the entire floodplain (even if it is completely occupied by agriculture).

#### FLOW-CHART TO GUIDE THE DEFINITION OF THE CLASS

Figure 4 shows a diagram to support the identification of the modern floodplain taking into account the interaction of F2 with the other related indicators (mainly CA3). The diagram assumes that artificial levées are absent or, if present, the modern floodplain cannot extend behind them. The proposed scheme is not exhaustive, given that other particular cases could occur that are not included here.

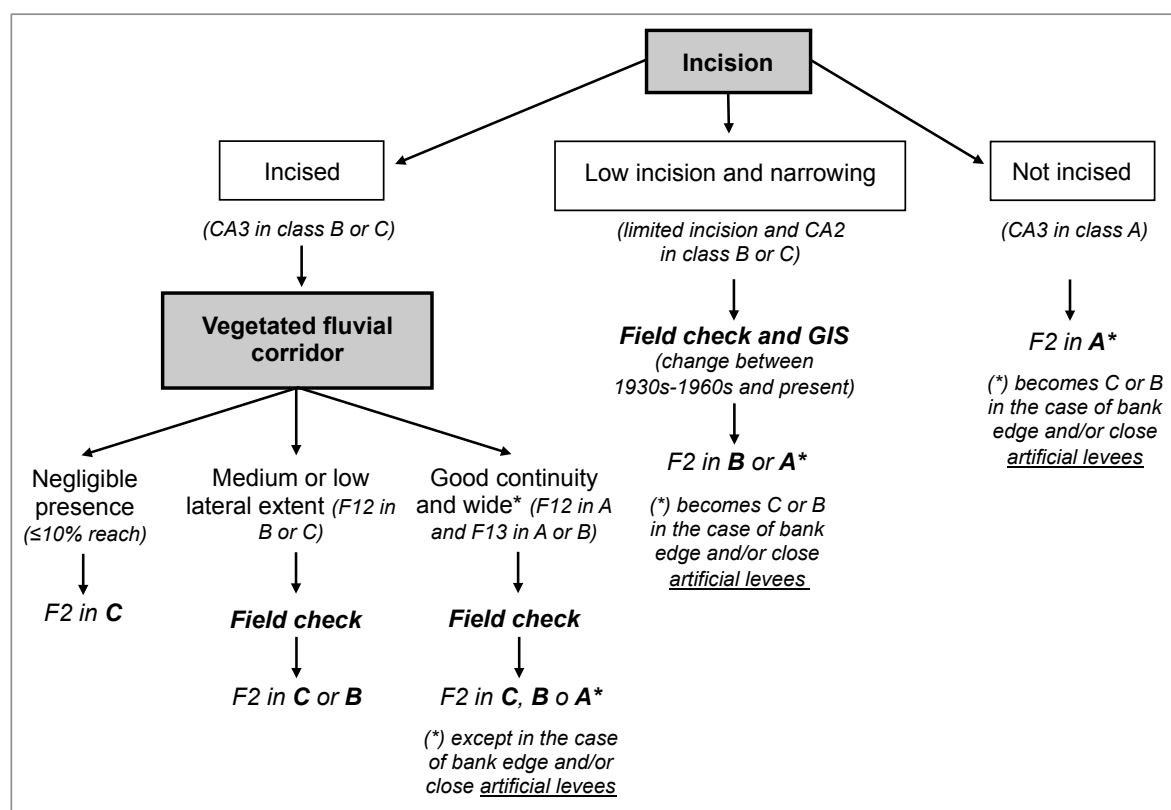


Figure A3. 4 Sketch of the interactions between F2 and other related indicators.  
Class B may correspond to B1 or B2, depending on the width of the modern floodplain.

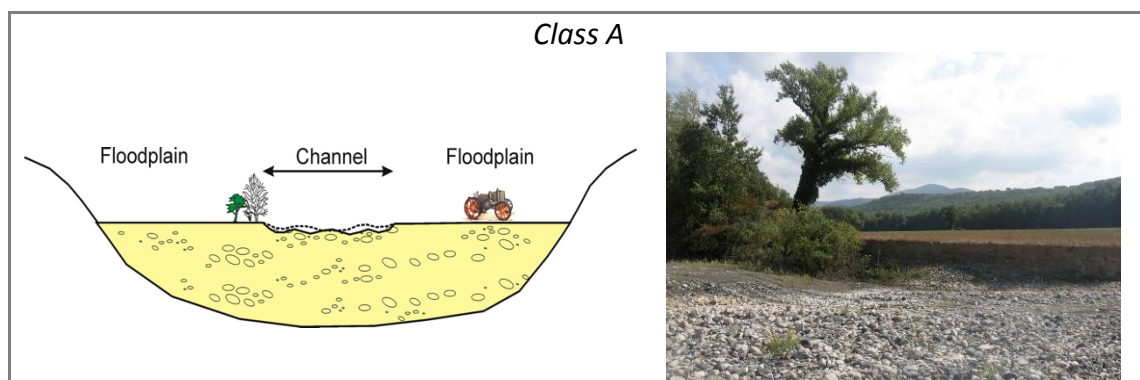
**EXTENDED ANSWERS**

Confinement type	Partly confined or unconfined
Range of application	Not evaluated in the case of mountain streams along steep (>3%) alluvial fans
A	Presence of a relatively continuous (> 66% of the reach length) and sufficiently wide modern floodplain, that is, when the mean width (sum on the two sides) is at least twice the channel width ( $W$ ) in the case of single-thread or anabranching channels (types 10, 12-14, 16-22), or at least $1 W$ in the case of braided or wandering channels (types 8, 9, 11, 15). For anabranching channels, the reach length is the sum of the lengths of the individual anabranches.
B1	Presence of a discontinuous modern floodplain (10÷66% of the reach length) but sufficiently wide, that is, when the mean width (sum on the two sides) is at least twice the channel width ( $W$ ) in the case of single-thread or anabranching channels (types 10, 12-14, 16-22), or at least $1 W$ in the case of braided or wandering channels (types 8, 9, 11, 15). Or presence of a continuous (> 66% of the reach length) but not sufficiently wide modern floodplain, that is, when the mean width (sum on the two sides) is $\leq 2 W$ in the case of single-thread or anabranching channels, or $\leq 1 W$ in the case of braided or wandering channels (types 8, 9, 11, 15).
B2	Presence of a discontinuous modern floodplain (10÷66% of the reach length) not sufficiently wide, that is, when the mean width (sum on the two sides) is $\leq 2 W$ in the case of single-thread or anabranching channels (types 10, 12-14, 16-22), or $\leq 1 W$ in the case of braided or wandering channels (types 8, 9, 11, 15).
C	Absence of a modern floodplain or negligible presence ( $\leq 10\%$ of the reach length of any width).

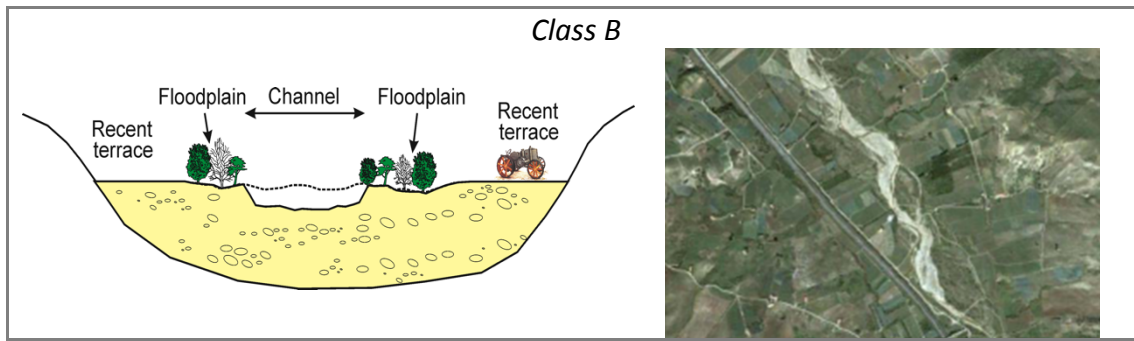
## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE



**Figure A3.5 Differences between a modern floodplain and a recent terrace.**  
 (1) and (2) Examples of modern floodplain (note the very limited differences in elevation with channel bars); 3: recent terrace generated by a bed incision of about 2÷3 m; 4: recent terrace generated by an intense incision (> 3 m).

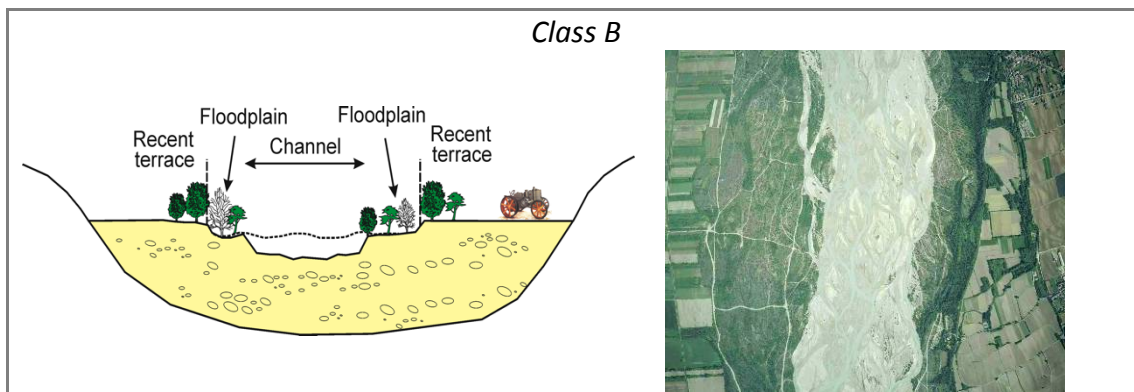


**Figure A3.6 Case 1.**  
 The channel is not incised ( $V_3$  in *Class A*), therefore the adjacent alluvial surface corresponds to a modern floodplain (*Class A*).



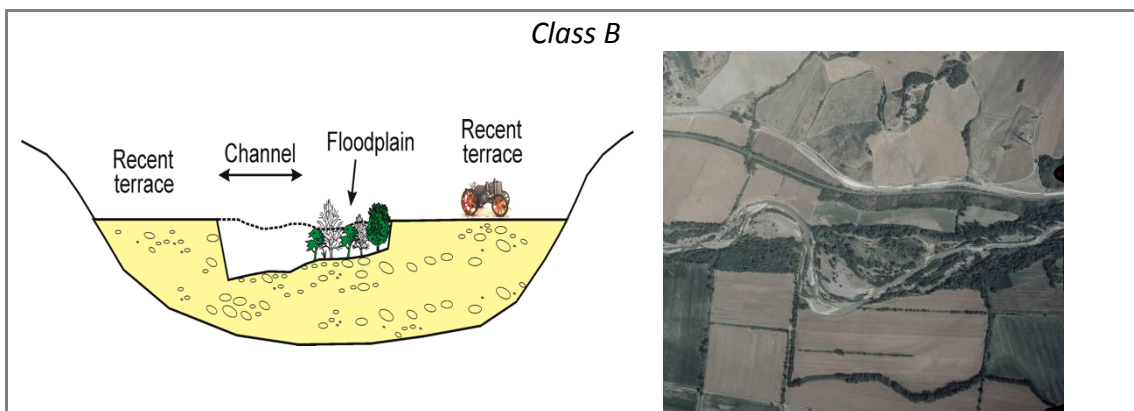
**Figure A3.7 Case 2.**

The channel is slightly incised and narrowed compared to 1930s-60s. Vegetation in the fluvial corridor is quite wide (*F12* in *Class B*) and mostly coincides with the channel of 1930s-60s. The field assessment enables verification that the vegetation corridor coincides with the modern floodplain, resulting therefore in *Class B* (*B1* or *B2*, depending on the floodplain width).



**Figure A3.8 Case 3.**

The channel is moderately incised and slightly narrowed compared to 1930s-60s. Vegetation corridor is continuous and wide (*F12* and *F13* in *Class A*). Field assessment enables verification that the vegetation corridor also includes portions of recent terraces, therefore the floodplain is not sufficiently wide (*Class B1* or *B2*).



**Figure A3.9 Case 4.**

The channel is incised and the vegetation corridor has a medium width (*F12* in *Class B*). Field assessment enables verification that most of the vegetations corridor corresponds to a modern floodplain formed after incision as consequence of lateral mobility (*Class B1* or *B2*).



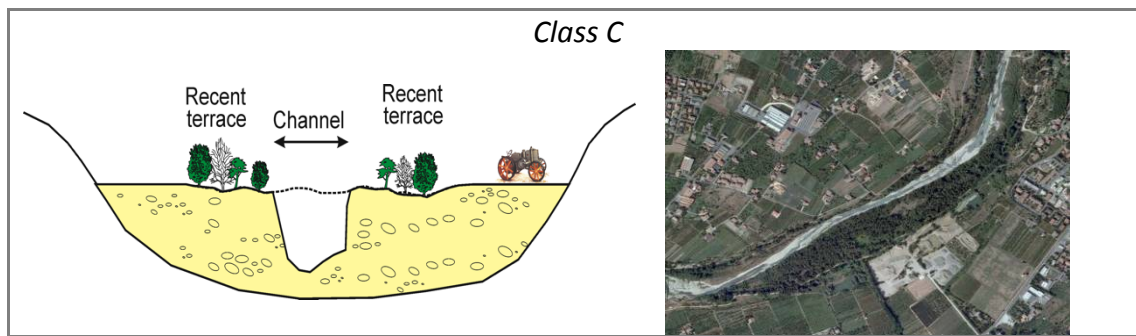


Figure A3. 10 Case 5.

The channel is heavily incised ( $> 6$  m) and narrowed, and the vegetation corridor has a medium width (*F12 in Class B*). Field assessment enables verification that the vegetation in this case occupies portions of the 1930s-60s channel disconnected by the present channel (recent terraces) (*Class C*).

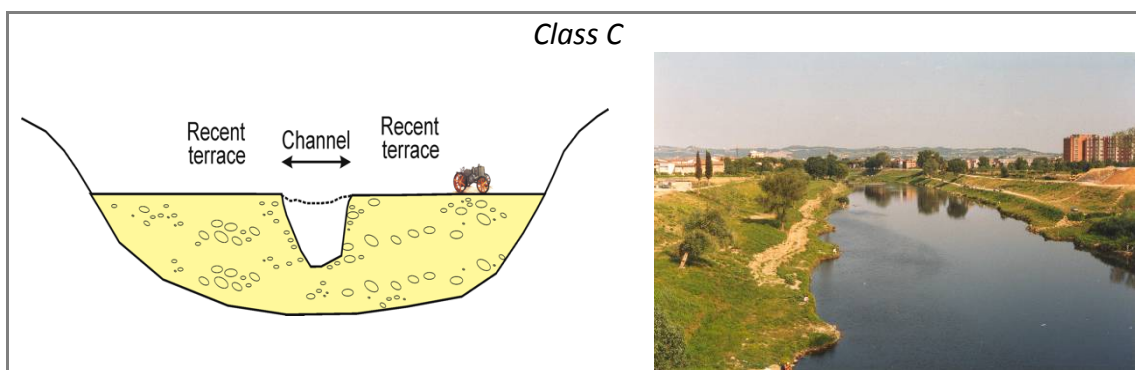


Figure A3. 11 Case 6.

The channel is heavily incised ( $> 6$  m) and vegetation corridor that could be a post-incision floodplain is absent (*F12 in Class C*), therefore the reach is necessarily in *Class C*.

### A3.3.3 F3: Hillslope – river corridor connectivity

#### DESCRIPTION

The linkage between hillslopes and river corridor is evaluated here in the case of **confined channels**, as this is very important for the natural supply of sediment and large wood. The indicator refers to the overall river corridor (including small and discontinuous portions of modern floodplain and/or recent terraces which may be present along confined streams), given that a large quantity of hillslope material can temporarily be stored along small portions of modern floodplains or terraces before being involved in sediment transport. On the other hand, the indicator does not evaluate the presence of a potentially erodible corridor.

The connectivity between hillslopes and river corridor is based on the presence and percentage on the reach length (i.e. sum of both sides) of elements of disconnection such as roads, as well as structures for landslides protection, in a **strip conventionally 50 m wide for each side of the river corridor** (i.e., channel and floodplain), starting from the base of the hillslopes. Agricultural terraces are also considered as elements of disconnection as they reduce the potential supply of sediment.

The strip can easily be obtained from remote sensing, once the river corridor is defined, but a field survey to check the presence of intercepting structures is also recommended (e.g. in forested river corridors). The width of 50 m, for simplicity, is evaluated as the

horizontal projection. Possible sub-horizontal surfaces located on the top of the hillslope (e.g., in the case of a terrace) but included within the strip of 50 m are excluded from the analysis, as they do not potentially contribute to the sediment and wood supply.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Reach	<i>Lateral</i> : Floodplain/adjacent hillslopes
<b>Measurements</b> : Remote sensing and field survey	

#### EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type	Confined
<b>A</b>	A full connectivity exists between hillslopes and river corridor (channel and floodplain), extending for most of the reach ( $> 90\%$ ).
<b>B</b>	The connectivity between hillslopes and river corridor exists for a significant portion of the reach ( $33\div 90\%$ ).
<b>C</b>	The connectivity between hillslopes and river corridor exists for a small portion of the reach ( $\leq 33\%$ ).

#### ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

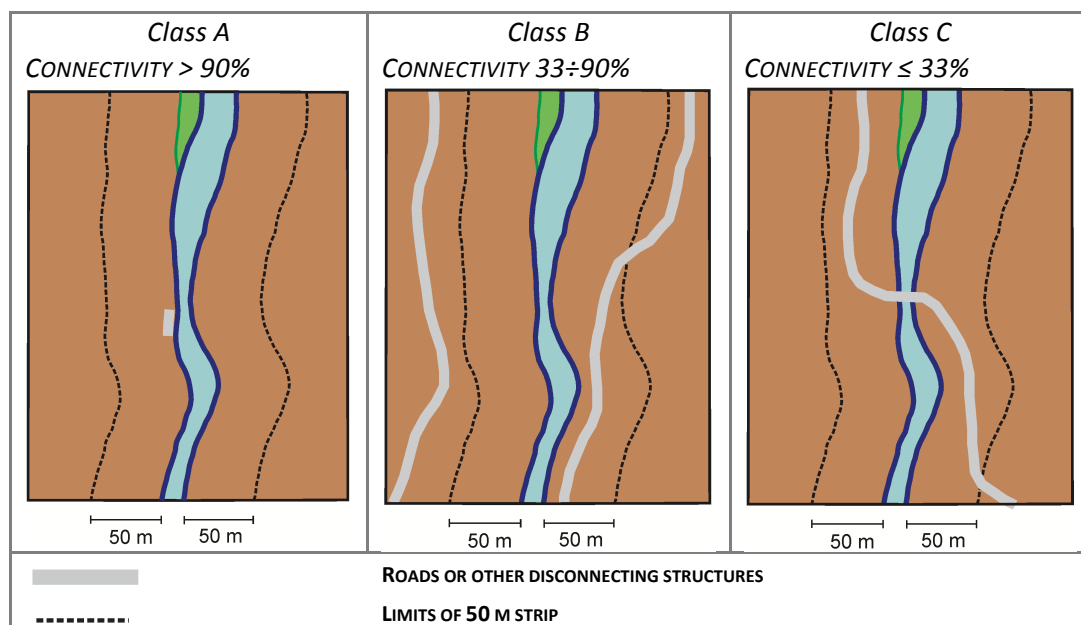


Figure A3. 12 Connectivity between hillslopes and fluvial corridor.

Classes as a function of the link between stream and adjacent hillslopes for a strip 50 m wide on both sides starting from the base of the hillslopes.

#### A3.3.4 F4: Processes of bank retreat

##### DESCRIPTION

Bank erosion is a key process contributing to sediment supply as well as to the development of the floodplain and the turnover of riparian vegetation and habitats. It is necessary to evaluate whether bank erosion processes occur as expected for a given river

type (e.g. erosion along the outer meander bend in meandering channels), or if there is a significant difference, such as absence of erosion due to widespread bank control, or excessive bank failures due to instability of the system (e.g. due to channel incision).

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal:</i> Site/Reach	<i>Lateral:</i> Channel
<b>Measurements:</b> Remote sensing and field survey	

This indicator is applied only to **partly confined and unconfined channels**, given that in confined channels the banks are often directly in contact with the slopes, and hillslope processes dominate (see indicator F3).

Moreover, the indicator is **not applied in Low-Energy streams**. In such rivers, bank erosion can still occur, but usually at significantly lower rates compared to other river types. Therefore, it would be extremely difficult to define the minimum level of bank erosion that is expected in unaltered conditions for such rivers.

Whereas bank erosion is commonly expected in meandering rivers, this is not the case of Low-Energy streams having 'passive meandering'. They are quite common in some north European regions (e.g., many regions of UK, etc.), and are characterised by a meandering pattern (e.g., type 21) that changes very slowly or is inherited from past geological conditions and at present no longer has the stream power necessary to deform the channel boundaries through active bed scour and bank erosion (underfit streams).

For all other river types (medium to high energy rivers) the indicator evaluates whether bank erosion processes are altered along the reach. Two opposite situations of alteration are considered: (1) bank erosion processes are lacking or they clearly occur less frequently than expected; (2) bank erosion processes are clearly in excess of what would be experienced in unaltered conditions. The two situations are investigated as follows.

(1) Bank erosion processes occur **less frequently** than expected. The scarce occurrence of bank erosion may not only be related to **bank protections**, but also to other interventions that may induce a significant **reduction in bed slope** and therefore in stream energy (e.g., upstream of dams, weirs, check dams, etc.). Three classes are defined: (A) frequent retreating banks; (B) retreating banks less frequent than expected, i.e. bank erosion is observed locally and for limited lengths; (C) complete absence or negligible presence (very localized erosion) of retreating banks. The definition of precise values of expected bank erosion in natural conditions is extremely problematic. However, indicative minimum levels of expected bank erosion are provided to define the thresholds of the different classes (see extended answers) in order to reduce subjectivity in the choice. Furthermore, in unaltered conditions (class A) a sufficiently homogeneous distribution of retreating banks along the reach is expected, i.e. the minimum level of expected bank erosion should not be concentrated only in a small portion of the reach (see extended answers).

(2) An **excessive** amount of bank erosion occurs along the reach. In this case, the indicator intends to account for those situations of widespread bank failures related to bed **incision** or to strong alterations of the flow regime: for example, **hydropeaking** may cause rapid water level oscillations inducing an excessive level of mass failures along the reach. In the first case, two diagnostic elements can be used to assess this condition: (1) in most retreating banks, mass failures are the dominant processes responsible for bank retreat (e.g., rotational, planar, cantilever failures, etc.); (2) this strong alteration is normally

associated with intense bed-level changes (i.e. the indicator CA3 is in class C) and bank failures occurring along scarps delimiting low terraces generated by this incision. In the case of hydropeaking, the excessive erosion may not necessarily occur in reaches affected by intense incision, but this situation is recognised when the occurrence of hydropeaking along the reach is evident, and bank retreat mainly occurs due to mass failures, because of the rapid drawdown during the recessional phase of the hydrograph.

The length of eroding banks along the reach is evaluated from **remote sensing**, while **field survey** is useful for interpreting the types of bank erosion processes, i.e. mass failures in the case of excessive erosion by incision or hydropeaking, or for verifying situations which are not sufficiently clear from remote sensing. Therefore, the frequency of bank erosions is referred to the date of the remote sensing image used for the overall application of the index, and does not require updating in the field in case of some new bank erosion being noted. Sub-reaches where the channel is directly in contact with hillslopes or ancient terraces are excluded from the assessment.

#### **EXTENDED ANSWERS**

<b>Confinement type</b>	Partly confined or unconfined
<b>Range of application</b>	Not evaluated in the case of Low-Energy ERT types from 17 to 22, including Groudwater-Fed streams
<b>A</b>	Bank erosion occurs for a sufficient length (a minimum of >10% of the total length of the banks, excluding portions directly in contact with hillslopes or ancient terraces), and with a sufficiently homogeneous distribution (i.e. bank erosions are distributed along >33% of the reach length), as expected for the river typology. For instance, erosion frequently occurs in the outer bank of bends (types 12, 13, 14) and/or in front of bars (types from 8 to 11 and 15).
<b>B</b>	Moderate alteration of bank erosion processes: bank erosion occurs less frequently than expected for the river typology ( $\leq 10\%$ of the total length of the banks), because impeded by protective elements and/or scarce channel dynamics related to other human interventions (e.g., reduction in bed slope related to check dams or weirs). Or bank erosion occurring for >10% but concentrated on a limited portion of the reach ( $\leq 33\%$ of reach length). Or significant presence (>25% of the total length of the banks) of unstable, eroding banks by mass failure related to excessive bank height because of bed incision or to alterations of flow regime (hydropeaking).
<b>C</b>	Complete absence (very localized erosion, i.e. $\leq 2\%$ of the total length of the banks) of retreating riverbanks due to excessive human control (bank protection, reduction in bed slope related to check dams or weirs) (except for Low-Energy reaches: see range of application). Or significant presence (>50% of the total length of the banks) of unstable, eroding banks by mass failure related to excessive bank height because of bed incision or to alterations of flow regime (hydropeaking).

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

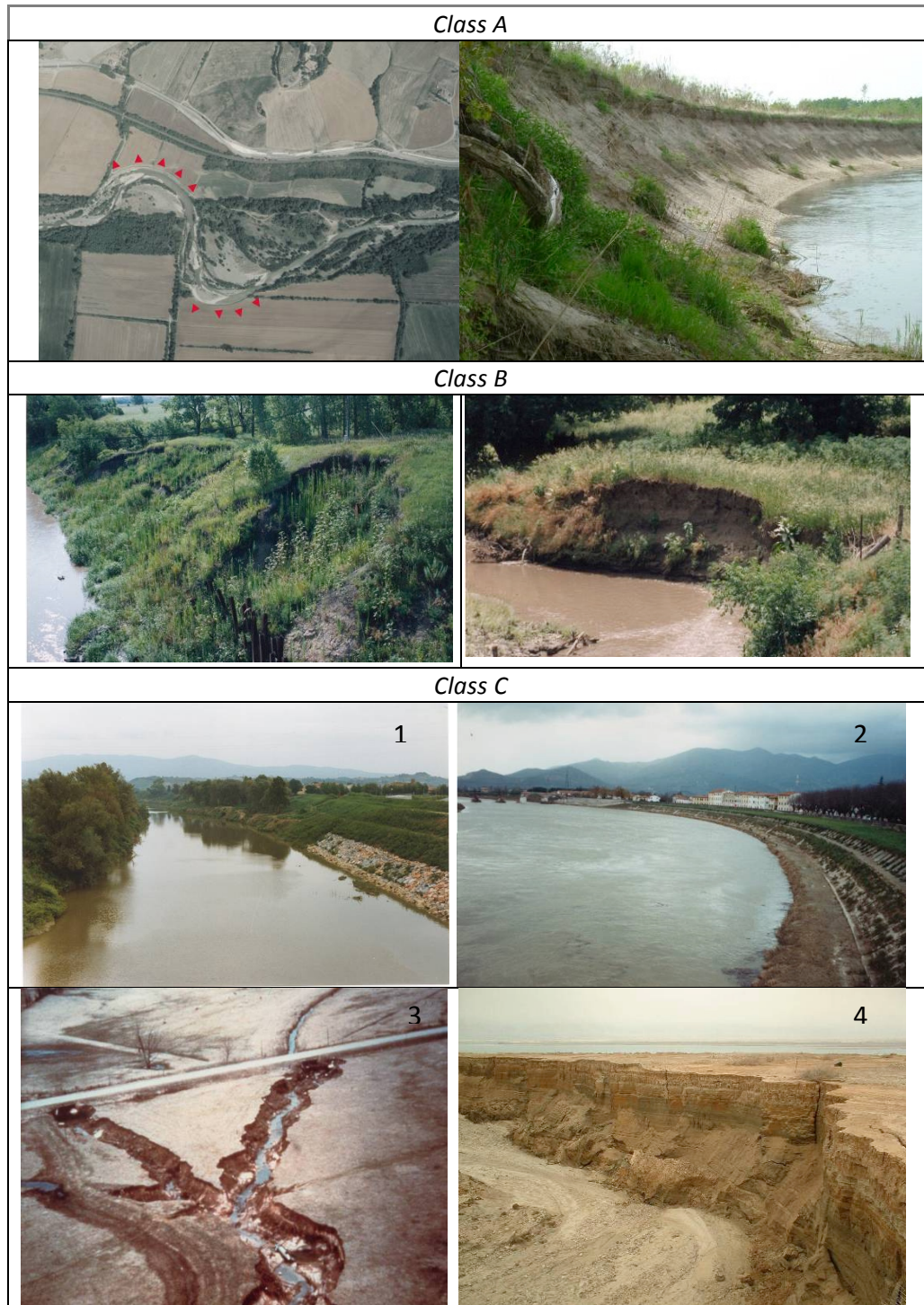


Figure A3. 13 Processes of bank retreat.

*Class A*: frequent retreating banks (red arrows, photo on the left), as expected for the river typology. *Class B*: bank erosion occurs less frequently than expected for the river typology. *Class C*, 1,2: complete absence or very localized presence of eroding banks due to excessive human control. 3, 4 significant presence of unstable, eroding banks by mass failure related to an excessive bank height because of bed incision.



### A3.3.5 F5: Presence of a potentially erodible corridor

#### DESCRIPTION

The presence of a potentially erodible corridor is nowadays widely recognised as a positive attribute of rivers. This indicator evaluates the potential for the river to move laterally over the next decades (as opposed to the indicator *F4* which evaluates the current processes of bank erosion). As for *F4*, this is applied to **partly confined and unconfined** rivers. The indicator is also applied to Low-Energy streams, even though the rate and extension of bank erosion may be low. The presence of fixing structures or artificial elements that protect against possible erosion may alter the expected natural lateral mobility of all river types.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Reach	<i>Lateral</i> : Entire floodplain (including recent terraces)
<b>Measurements</b> : Remote sensing	

A rapid assessment is performed by evaluating whether the width and longitudinal continuity of areas without relevant human structures or infrastructures (e.g. houses, roads) are within or out of given ranges. Artificial structures which limit the width of the erodible corridor are: bank protection structures, embankments, artificial levées, as well as all other anthropic elements (e.g. houses, main roads) which would be protected from lateral channel dynamics. Past bank protection structures (e.g. groynes), even if no longer in contact with the channel, are considered as structures which can potentially prevent the lateral channel dynamics (while they are not taken into account in the indicator *A6*). Other minor structures, such as farmed fields and dirt patches or roads, are not taken into account by this indicator.

The width of the potentially erodible corridor is defined and measured as for the indicator *F2*. For class A, the width of the potentially erodible corridor (the sum for both sides of the river, although an erodible corridor may only be present on one side) must be at least equal to  $nW$ , where  $W$  is the channel width,  $n = 2$  for single thread or anabranching channels, and  $n = 1$  for braided or wandering channels.

The continuity is measured (similarly to the indicator *F2*) as the percentage of reach length with the presence of a potentially erodible corridor, even when only on one side. In the case of **meandering channels** (types 14, 18, 21), the continuity of the potentially erodible corridor is calculated exclusively as a % of the length of the external meander banks, i.e. inner meander banks are not evaluated.

In the case of **anabranching channels**, the continuity of the potentially erodible corridor is calculated as % of the sum of the lengths of all the anabranches, and the width includes islands (if erodible). In the case of **partly confined channels**, where the potentially erodible corridor corresponds to all the available floodplain, the reach is attributed class A even if the width of the erodible corridor is lower than  $nW$ .

## EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type		Partly confined or unconfined
A		Presence of a relatively continuous ( $> 66\%$ of the reach length) and sufficiently wide potentially erodible corridor (EC), that is, the mean width (sum of the two sides) is at least twice the channel width ( $W$ ) in the case of single-thread or anabranching channels (types 10, 12-14, 16-22), or at least $1 W$ for braided or wandering channels (types 8, 9, 11, 15). In the case of presence of anabranches, the reach length is intended as the sum of the lengths of all anabranches.
		Presence of a potentially erodible corridor (EC) with medium continuity ( $33\div 66\%$ of the reach length) and any width; or a potentially EC for $> 66\%$ of the reach length but not sufficiently wide.
		Presence of a potentially erodible corridor (EC) of any width but with low continuity ( $\leq 33\%$ of the reach length).

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

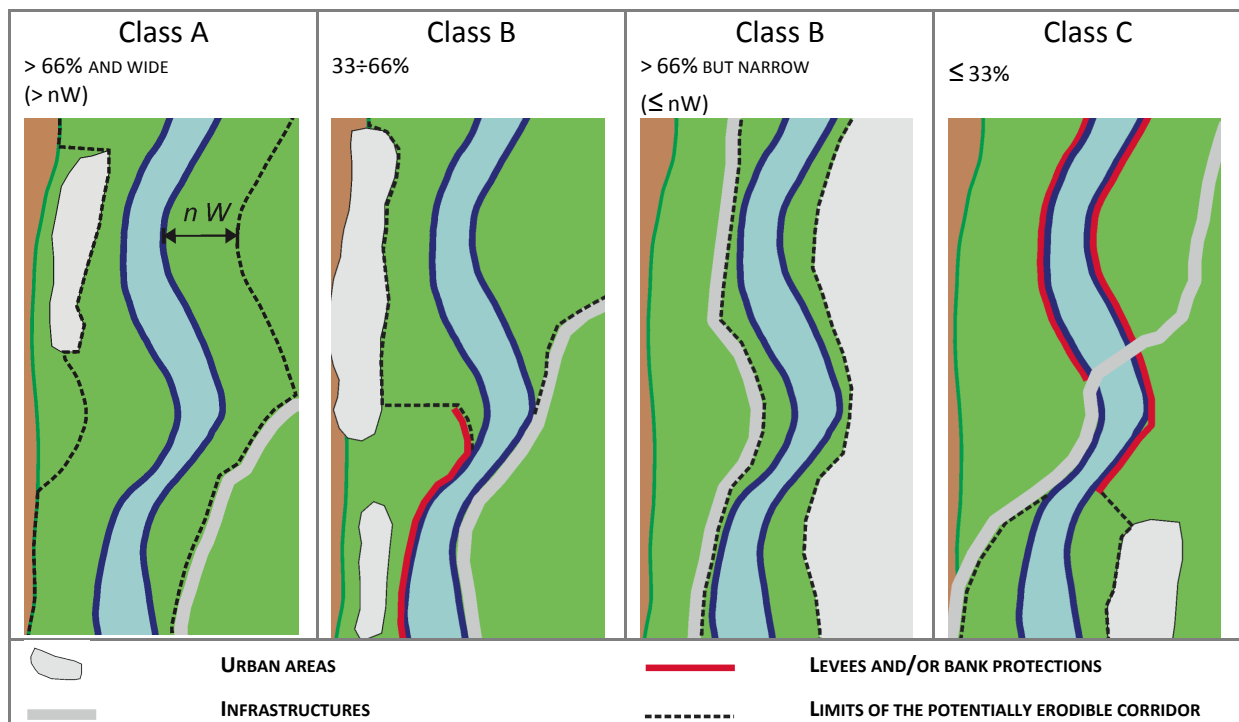


Figure A3. 14 Potentially erodible corridor.

**Class A:** notwithstanding the constructed area and the road, a continuous and sufficiently wide erodible corridor exists.  
**Class B:** the erodible corridor has a medium longitudinal continuity ( $33\div 66\%$ ) (second figure from left), or it is continuous ( $> 66\%$ ) but not sufficiently wide (mean width  $\leq nW$ ) (third figure from left). **Class C:** a potentially erodible corridor (of any width) exists only for  $\leq 33\%$  of the reach.

## Morphology

### **A3.3.6 F6: Bed configuration – valley slope**

#### **DESCRIPTION**

Geomorphic units characterizing the channel configuration represent the main focus of the first two indicators of morphology. They are applied either to confined single-thread channels (*F6*) or to unconfined – partly confined and confined transitional or multi-thread channels (*F7*) respectively.

In the case of confined single-thread channels, the planimetric pattern is imposed by the hillslopes and therefore is not significant in terms of morphological assessment, while bed configuration (i.e., the instream geomorphic units characterizing the channel bed) is a diagnostic element of the morphological functionality. This indicator evaluates whether or not the presence of transversal structures has altered the expected bed configuration (cascade, step-pool, plane bed, riffle-pool, dune-ripple) based on the mean bed slope of the reach. In fact, a strong correlation exists between bed slope and configuration, such that for increasing slopes the following order of forms is expected with increasing slope: dune-ripples (only in sand-bed channels), riffle-pool, plane bed, step-pool / cascade. These morphologies have ecological implications as each of them is characterized by a mosaic of typical physical habitats.

The existence of a transversal structure can cause an artificial lowering of the local energy slope and therefore a possible alteration of the bed configuration and, consequently, of the associated physical habitats. This indicator intends therefore to evaluate the magnitude of change caused by transversal structures and not just their presence (which is evaluated in the indicators of artificiality).

<b>Spatial Scale</b>	
<i>Longitudinal:</i> Site/Reach	<i>Lateral:</i> Channel
<b>Measurements:</b> Field survey and Remote sensing	

This indicator is evaluated only in the case of **alluvial single thread confined channels**, i.e. ERT types from 4 to 7 (in the case of multi-thread or wandering channels, it is substituted by *F7*, therefore *F6* and *F7* are necessarily mutually exclusive).

The operator should determine the mean valley slope along the reach (based on the longitudinal bed profile already used during the segmentation phase), and then define the **expected bed form** according to Table 1. Class limits may have some overlap, due to local reach conditions, which can modify (expand/reduce) the boundaries between bed configuration morphologies. Typical alterations of bed configuration are associated with hydraulic structures on high gradient channels (i.e. check dams on step-pool morphology), which aim to limit river energy and prevent bedload transport. However, the amount of bed configuration alteration depends on the initial reach conditions, the local bedload dynamics and the geometry of the structures (width, number and distance between structures): in some cases, for example, check dams do not modify the bed configuration morphology (from one type to another) but only the size of morphological units (e.g. steps, pools, etc.). In low gradient channels (i.e. less than approximately 0.2%), bed configuration depends on the bed sediment size (gravel or sand) and bank sediment type (cohesive or non-cohesive). This allows dune-ripple channels (i.e. sand substrate and deeper) to be distinguished from



riffle-pool channels (i.e. gravel substrate and shallower), where single-thread dune-ripple perennial channels cannot develop at a higher bed slope ( $> 0.2\%$ ). Riffle-pool and plane-bed morphologies may also have some overlap in terms of bed slope (between 1 and 2%) as well as plane-bed and step-pool morphologies (between 3 and 4%). This variability depends on the local bedload conditions (amount and transport capacity) and the lateral confinement imposed by hillslopes.

The **mean valley slope** along the reach is simply calculated as the ratio between the overall difference in elevation and the reach length (Figure 15). In the case of long reaches in which the bed slope is highly variable, it is suggested to calculate the bed slope in sub-reaches (eventually delimited by crossing structures). Should the reach limit correspond to a crossing structure (dam or weir), bed elevation immediately downstream from the structure (corresponding to the original bed elevation) is considered for the calculation of the mean slope. In the case of an artificial reservoir being located at the downstream limit of the reach, the lower bed elevation used for valley slope calculation should correspond to the starting point of the reservoir.

**Table A3. 1 Relations between range of bed slope and expected bed forms.**

Bed forms	Dominant grain size	Range of bed slope (%)
Dune-ripple	Sand and fine gravel	$\leq 0.2$
Riffle-pool	Gravel and cobbles	$\leq 2$
Plane bed	Cobbles and gravel	$1\div 4$
Step-pool/cascade	Boulders and cobbles	$> 3$

The assessment is carried out in the field (if possible by remote sensing) by identifying the prevailing bed configuration morphology and checking its consistency with the expected morphology based on Table 1. When artificial transversal structures are present, bed configuration is evaluated between the structures. In the absence of such structures, possible differences between the expected and the observed morphology can be due to local natural factors (e.g. log steps, landsides, moraines, etc.) but these are not considered as alterations. Even in the case of transversal structures, natural factors can cause some local difference between expected and observed morphology. For this reason, the thresholds between class A and B and between class B and C (33% and 66%, respectively) are higher than those used for other indicators of functionality.

## EXTENDED ANSWERS

<b>Confinement type</b>	Confined
<b>Range of application</b>	Applied to alluvial single-thread channels (ERT types from 4 to 7). Not evaluated in the case of confined with bedrock or colluvial channels (ERT types from 1 to 3), and in the case of deep streams when it is not possible to observe the bed configuration
<b>A</b>	Bed forms consistent with the mean valley slope: bed configuration corresponds to that expected, based on the mean valley slope along the reach (Table 1), or bed forms not consistent for a length $\leq 33\%$ of the reach. Included in this class are also the morphologies imposed by natural factors (e.g. log steps, landslides, etc.) which locally can determine unexpected bed forms (e.g. riffles in a steep reach, step-pool in a low gradient reach).
<b>B</b>	Bed forms not consistent with the mean valley slope for a length $> 33\%$ and $\leq 66\%$ of the reach, because bed configuration does not correspond to that expected, based on the mean valley slope along the reach (Table 1), because of presence of transversal structures (dams, check dams, weirs, sills, ramps, etc.).
<b>C</b>	Bed forms not consistent with the mean valley slope for a length $> 66\%$ of the reach, because bed configuration does not correspond to that expected, based on the mean valley slope along the reach (Table 1), because of presence of transversal structures (dams, check dams, weirs, sills, ramps, etc.).

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

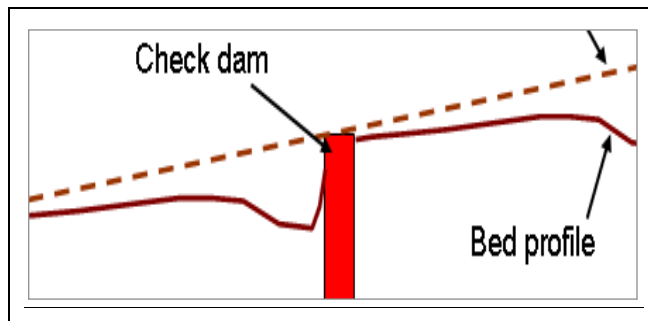


Figure A3. 15 Bed configuration and valley slope. Rule for the measurement of the mean valley slope of the reach in the presence of structures (check dams) and to identify the length of analysis of bed morphology.

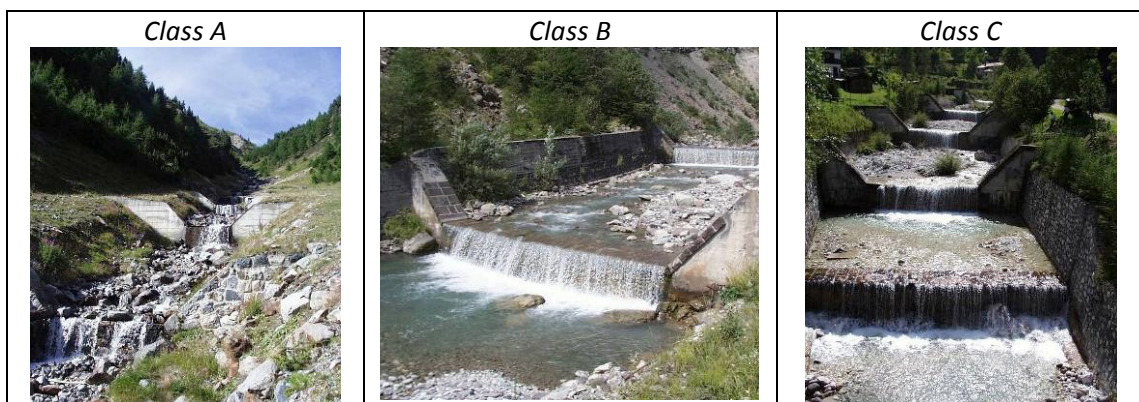


Figure A3. 16 Bed configuration and valley slope.

Class A: consolidation check dams that do not alter the expected bed configuration based on valley slope (step pool in both cases). Class B: some consolidation check dams determine a bed configuration (plane bed) different from the expected one (cascade / step pool) for a length  $< 66\%$  of the reach Class C: extended  $> 66\%$  of the reach length) alteration of bed configuration, due to closely-spaced transversal structures.

### A3.3.7 F7: Planform pattern

#### DESCRIPTION

This indicator concerns the features characterizing the **planform pattern** of alluvial channels, including the **geomorphic units** and the **longitudinal variability in channel width** (whereas the morphological characteristics in cross-section are separately assessed by *F9*). The aim is to evaluate whether these features are those expected for the channel pattern (e.g., braiding, meandering, etc.), or there are alterations in their presence and spatial distribution. The presence of instream geomorphic units, as well as the variability of channel width, have important implications in terms of ecological conditions, as they determine the availability and variability of physical habitats. Past changes in channel planform pattern related to human interventions (e.g., meander cutoff) or channel adjustments are not considered by this indicator, as they are evaluated separately in other indicators (*A8*, *CA1*, and *CA2*).

Differently from *F6*, this indicator assesses **geomorphic units** which characterize the planform pattern, whereas no consideration is made in this case on the bed configuration. The geomorphic units are those typical of alluvial channels, such as bars, islands, benches, as well as secondary channels or anabranches which characterize multi-thread morphological patterns (e.g. braided, anabranching). Altered situations can be related to the presence of artificial elements, including interventions/actions which modify the normal pattern of geomorphic units (e.g. transversal structures, channel resectioning, instream sediment or vegetation removal, etc.) or can be associated with channel adjustments (e.g. incised reaches with the disappearance of geomorphic units). An increase of geomorphic units related to some artificial element can also be an alteration. For example, the occurrence of bars and braiding caused by a local alteration of sediment flow (e.g. upstream and/or downstream from a bridge or another transversal structure) along a single-thread channel is evaluated as an alteration.

**Longitudinal variability in channel width** along the reach is considered as an additional feature of the overall planimetric characteristics. For example, braided channels are normally characterized by a succession of nodes-islands, as well as meandering channels with point bars which normally have some variability in channel width, while a lack of width heterogeneity may be caused by artificially fixed banks.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Reach	<i>Lateral</i> : Channel
Measurements: Field survey and/or remote sensing	

The indicator is applied to **partly confined and unconfined channels**, as well as to **wandering or multi-thread confined channels** (for single-thread confined channels, the indicator *F6* is applied). The indicator is mainly evaluated by **remote sensing** integrated with **field survey** at representative sites.

For the application of this indicator, it is necessary to contextualize the assessment to the type of channel pattern characterizing the reach. Three main situations can be considered in terms of **morphological typologies**: (1) single-thread channels (types 12-14, 16-18, 20 and 21), (2) wandering or braided channels (types 8, 9, 11, 15), and (3) anabranching channels (types 10, 19, 22).

(1) **Single-thread channels.** Artificial channel fixation and/or excessive channel maintenance (e.g. bar clearing) are the most frequent human interventions altering the planform pattern in single-thread channels (i.e. a lack of typical geomorphic units and of longitudinal variability in channel width). In the case of **Low-Energy** single thread channels with natural absence of unvegetated bars (e.g. types 20 and 21 of the ERT), **vegetated bars** and **benches** are typical geomorphic features promoting channel width variability.

(2) **Wandering and braided channels.** Classification of the reach as one of these river types during the segmentation phase implies that characteristic geomorphic features (mid-channel bars, bifurcations, etc.) are necessarily present along the reach, but can locally be modified by the presence of artificial structures (e.g. local loss of braiding pattern because of transversal structures).

(3) **Anabranching channels.** Anabranching channels are characterised by the presence of various anabranches separated by vegetated islands. Each anabranch can exhibit a specific morphology attributable to the other channel types described above. In the case of Low-Energy anabranching channels (i.e. anastomosing), the single anabranch channels can be described as straight to meandering single-thread. In the case of high energy anabranching, single anabranches may include bars and exhibit a wandering or even a braided channel morphology. Therefore, for anabranching channels the assessment of channel morphology can be referred to other channel types.

A particular case for the application of this indicator is when some **river restoration intervention** has recently been carried out along the reach. The removal of constraints (e.g., fixed banks) may induce a natural occurrence of geomorphic units (and width variability) which can be considered as a morphological change towards a more natural planform pattern: therefore, in such cases, the indicator changes from more altered to less altered conditions. More problematic is the case of **morphological restoration** (i.e. artificial modification in channel pattern), for example when a completely new planform pattern is imposed (e.g., from a braided to a meandering). In general, the indicator *F7* should not be applied for the years immediately after the intervention since the river needs a sufficient time to adapt to the newly imposed (restored) conditions. **A few years** (i.e. at least 5 years) **are required following the restoration intervention** for correctly interpreting the new condition.

#### **LONGITUDINAL EXTENT OF THE ALTERATION**

In terms of the longitudinal distribution and extent of the alteration along the reach, a common case is when a **portion of the reach** exhibits the natural pattern of geomorphic units characterizing a given morphology, but in other portions of the same reach this morphological planform pattern is altered. In this case the evaluation is straightforward because the unaltered portions of the reach are actually considered as the reference pattern of geomorphic units and width variability characterizing the reach morphological type (for example, a reach classified as braided may have some portion where the typical characteristics of the braided pattern are not present).

A more problematic case can be when the **entire reach** (or even more adjacent reaches or an entire segment) is altered. This case is not always straightforward and requires some caution in the interpretation on whether or not the observed channel pattern is the one expected in the context of its segment and landscape unit setting.

It is important to stress that **reference conditions for MQI are not defined in terms of a precise channel configuration** (e.g., meandering, braided) or a well-defined set of channel characteristics. This is because rivers are dynamic and follow complex evolutionary trajectories through time in response to variations of a series of driving variables and boundary conditions, so it is not possible to define such a precise morphology in a static way. Expressing this in another way, reasoning such as ‘in this reach the river is meandering but should be braided’ is deliberately avoided. However, it is generally possible to identify a **range of morphologies and typical geomorphic units** (rather than a precise channel pattern) that would be normally **expected in a given context and position within the catchment** (e.g. in a mountain area, high plain, or lowland), and therefore to recognise with a good degree of confidence when an **observed morphology is clearly beyond the physical context** of the reach location.

The following **two cases** indicate when the entire reach should be evaluated as altered.

1. **Highly impacted reach with an artificial (or artificially fixed) planform.** This is the case of an artificially imposed morphology (e.g., predominantly artificial bed and/or heavily engineered, stabilised banks). **Straight** (or very low sinuous) alluvial, unconfined (or partly confined) reaches are in most cases an artificial planform, given that natural straight channels generally occur for short distances. When the **planform is artificially fixed** by continuous bank protections, the alteration of the planform is obvious. Even in the case of sinuous or meandering reaches with completely fixed banks, the absence of width variability can be considered as a sufficient condition to evaluate the reach as altered. More problematic can be the case of typical single-thread, straight sinuous Low-Energy morphologies, i.e. **ERT types 17 or 20**, showing width homogeneity, occasional or no bars, and banks that are **not artificially fixed**. In such a case, the question is whether it is or not a natural planform, and caution should be used in the evaluation (see criteria later).

2. **Highly impacted reach induced by abrupt channel adjustments.** Less obvious can be the case of a reach that is not artificially fixed, but has been affected by dramatic channel adjustments, e.g., bed incision and narrowing altering its morphology and bed substrate, and creating a morphological configuration that is clearly beyond the physical context where the reach is located. An example might be a single-thread channel with occasional or no bars, that is a typical morphology associated to a Low-Energy setting (e.g. ERT types 17, 18, 20 or 21), located in a context of medium to high energy (alluvial fan, high or medium plain) where a morphology with a higher abundance of bars is expected. This morphology can be related for example to an intense bed incision and eventually bed-rock outcropping that can be clearly associated to some human causes (e.g., sediment deficit created by dams or check dams upstream, sediment mining, etc.). Some cautions should be made in this type of evaluation (see criteria later). In particular, only the cases when a channel morphology is completely out of the context should be assessed as an alteration, such as a typical Low-Energy configuration in a medium-high energy setting. A channel morphology that can fit within the range of possible morphologies in a given context (e.g., a free sinuous or meandering gravel-bed river with bars in a medium-high energy setting) will not be considered as an alteration.

### Criteria for the assessment

The following criteria can be used to assess a reach-scale alteration because the river morphology is beyond the physical context for the location of the reach.

(1) **Physical setting where the reach is placed.** This includes considerations on the position in the catchment, especially in terms of landscape unit where the segment is located, the upstream landscape units and their general characteristics in terms of valley gradient and potential bedload supply. Table 2 provides a summary of the most typical channel morphologies that could be expected in a series of physical settings. Note that the table is not prescriptive but provides only some general indications: if the observed morphology is out of the range of the typical expected morphologies, more investigation is needed

**Table A3. 2 Channel morphologies generally expected for some main physical settings.**

Physical setting	Typical range of channel morphology
Intermontane plains in mountain areas with high sediment supply	Braided, wandering or high-energy anabranching (ERT types from 8 to 11) most typical Single-thread, coarse-grained channels (ERT types from 12 to 14) also possible in partly confined settings
Plains in low-gradient formerly-glaciated valleys of mountain areas	Sinuuous or meandering, relatively fine-grained (13, 14, 17, 18, 20, 21) are possible
Alluvial fans or high (piedmont) plains with upstream areas of high sediment supply	Typically braided, wandering, high-energy anabranching (ERT types from 8 to 11, 15) ERT types from 12 to 14 also possible in partly confined settings
Hilly areas with prevailing hard rocks, relatively high valley gradient and medium to high sediment supply	Braided, wandering, high-energy anabranching (ERT types from 8 to 11, 15) are possible, or ERT types from 12 to 14
Hilly areas with prevailing soft rocks, relatively low valley gradient and relatively low coarse sediment supply	Prevailing single-thread channels (ERT types 12-14, 16-18)
Lowland and coastal plains with low valley gradient	ERT types from 17 to 22

(2) **Spatial distribution of channel morphology.** The most reliable and diagnostic information is to look at the channel morphology of the adjacent upstream and downstream reaches, or the typical morphology of unaltered streams in the same area and physical setting. A favourable case is when, upstream and downstream from the investigated reach, the planform pattern is characterized by clearly distinct geomorphic units and/or width variability, and a clear human factor for such a different pattern along the reach in question is identified (Figure 17). For example, a single-thread reach (characterized by fixed banks and heavy maintenance activity) between upstream and downstream braided reaches can be considered as entirely altered (Figure 17). An opposite case might be a braided (or wandering) confined channel clearly related to the presence of several check dams between upstream and downstream single-thread, confined reaches (e.g., ERT types 4, 5, 6 or 7). Other causes of alteration of the pattern of geomorphic units can be indirectly related to human activities. For example, a deeply incised reach (where incision is related to sediment removal or strong interception of bedload upstream) with a loss of the alluvial substrate and

associated geomorphic units, in a context where an alluvial channel with abundant bars is expected, can be considered as an alteration. In a Low-Energy setting, a completely straight, artificial reach within a more natural (sinuous, meandering or anabranching) pattern is obviously an altered planform configuration (Figure 17B).

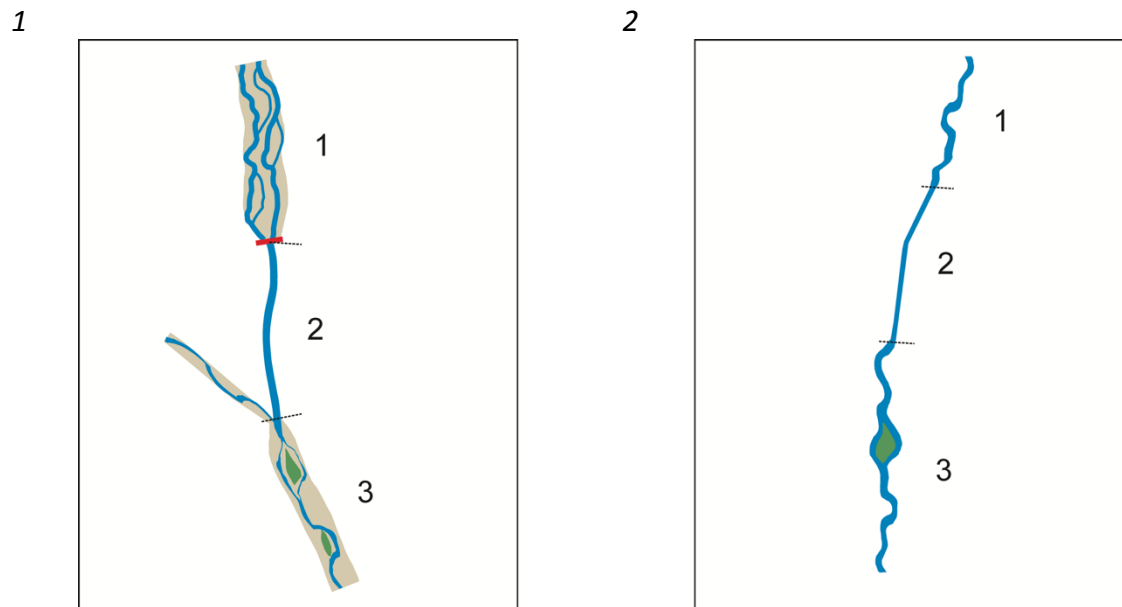


Figure A3. 17 Examples of altered reaches.

1: River segment within a high, intermontane plain in a medium-high energy setting with high lateral and upstream sediment supply. Reach 2 is in class C as it shows a typical Low-Energy morphology (single-thread with no bars) associated to incision and narrowing caused by a check dam and sediment removal, whereas reaches 1 and 3 exhibit a braided and wandering morphology, respectively, with abundance of bars. 2: River segment in a typical Low-Energy setting (lowland plain). Reaches 1 and 3 are sinuous (locally anabranching) whereas reach 3 exhibits a clearly artificial planform pattern (class C) due to past straightening and heavily engineered, stabilised banks.

Finally, it is important to remark that **temporal changes** in channel morphology are addressed by the Channel Adjustment indicators, and therefore the past planform pattern (1930s – 1960s: see CA1) is not used here as a criterion. However, the interpretation of alterations of channel pattern should be consistent with channel adjustments indicators (e.g., interpretation of a deeply incised reach with a completely altered morphology must be consistent with CA indicators).

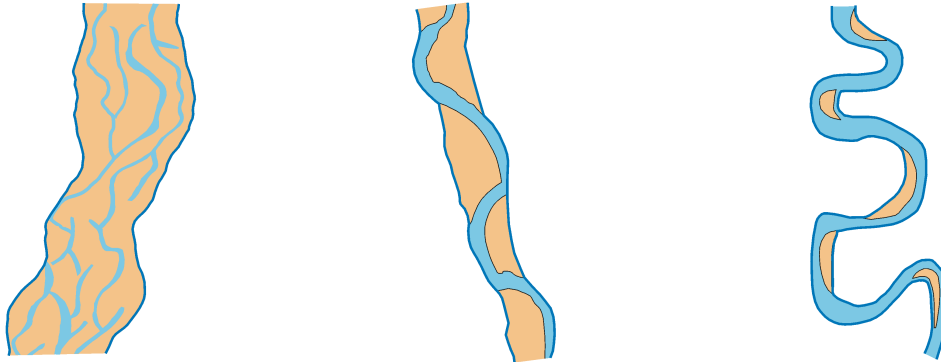
## EXTENDED ANSWERS

<b>Confinement type</b>	All typologies
<b>Range of application</b>	In the case of confined channels it is applied only to multi-thread or wandering morphologies (ERT types 8-11, 15, 19, 22). It is not applied in the case of recent (last 5 years) interventions of morphological restoration.
<b>A</b>	<p>Absence or negligible presence (<math>\leq 5\%</math> of the reach length) of alteration of the natural heterogeneity of geomorphic units and channel width expected for that river type.</p> <p><i>Braided (types 8, 9, 15)</i>: typical presence of a multi-thread configuration with several bifurcations and longitudinal bars, frequent pioneer islands and some mature islands, longitudinal variability of channel width with node-island alternation.</p> <p><i>Anabranching (types 10, 19, 22)</i>: typical presence of a multi-thread pattern with variable degree of sinuosity and anabranch channels separated by vegetated islands.</p> <p><i>Wandering (type 11)</i>: typical alternate side bars, chute cut-offs, low-water channel highly sinuous and relatively narrow within the bankfull channel, localized braiding phenomena, presence of pioneer islands and in some cases mature islands, longitudinal variability of channel width.</p> <p><i>Sinuuous or meandering with bars (types 13-14, 17-18)</i>: side or point bars, possible chute cut-offs, longitudinal variability of channel width in relation to the presence of bars and curvatures. <i>Sinuuous pseudo-meandering (types 12, 16)</i>: typical alternate side bars, chute cut-offs, low-water channel highly sinuous and relatively narrow within the bankfull channel, longitudinal variability of channel width but less evident than in wandering – braided channels.</p> <p><i>Low-energy single-thread (types 20, 21)</i>: longitudinal variability of channel width in relation to the presence of benches, curvature, and some occasional bank erosion. In some cases (e.g. reaches close to the river mouth), they do not necessarily exhibit a significant heterogeneity of geomorphic units and variability of channel width even in natural conditions.</p>
<b>B</b>	Alteration for a limited portion of the reach ( $\leq 33\%$ of the reach length) of the natural heterogeneity of geomorphic units and channel width expected for that river type.
<b>C</b>	Significant alteration for a significant portion of the reach ( $> 33\%$ of the reach length) of the natural heterogeneity of geomorphic units and channel width expected for that river type.

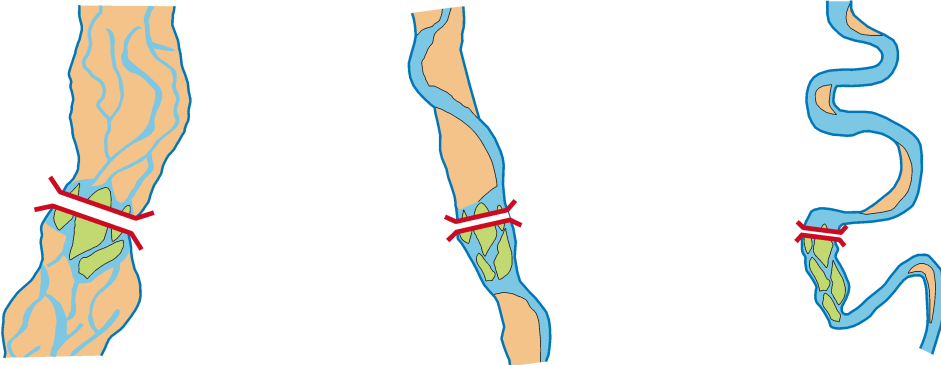


## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

### Class A



### Class B



### Class C

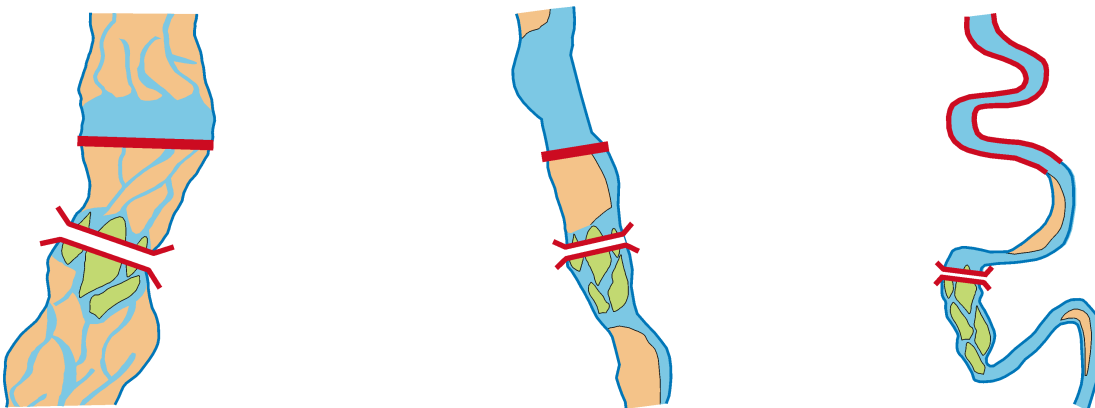


Figure A3. 18. Planform pattern: examples for multi-thread, transitional, and single-thread channels.

**Class A:** absence of alterations. **Class B:** a bridge can alter the morphological pattern ( $\leq 33\%$  of the reach) by the formation of islands. **Class C:** in case of a braided or transitional channel, a bridge and a check dam can produce significant alterations in the reach ( $> 33\%$ ). In the case of a single-thread channel, bank protections cause a loss of the geomorphic units and of the longitudinal variability in channel width, although the a meandering planimetric pattern is preserved.

### A3.3.8 F8: Presence of typical fluvial forms in the floodplain

#### DESCRIPTION

This indicator accounts for the presence or absence of typical fluvial forms (such as oxbow lakes, secondary channels, ridges and swales more or less hydrologically connected to the channel, etc.) that are normally expected to exist in the floodplain. Floodplains of most unconfined (or partly confined) alluvial rivers in natural conditions are typically characterised by some degree of morphological and topographic heterogeneity related to the presence of these geomorphic units. The absence of these features is therefore an indicator of alteration of the floodplain. These fluvial forms have an important geomorphological and hydraulic role, as well as an ecological relevance in determining floodplain habitats. The absence of these fluvial forms is related to artificial modifications, reworking and land use changes within the floodplain (e.g., urbanization, agriculture, infrastructures, flood defence schemes) and indicates a certain degree of alteration of the morphological functionality of the river. Note that the floodplain evaluated in this indicator is the entire floodplain (modern floodplain and possible recent terraces).

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal:</i> Reach	<i>Lateral:</i> Entire floodplain (including recent terraces)
<b>Measurements:</b> Remote sensing	

The indicator is **applied to partly confined or unconfined channels** (any morphological type), for which some degree of lateral mobility in the past generating some fluvial landforms in the floodplain is expected. Even in the case of ‘passive’ sinuous or meandering rivers, although the current energy and rate of bank erosion may be extremely low, some typical fluvial landforms in the floodplain (e.g., minor/subdued ridge-swale topography or occasional floodplain depressions) are expected.

The assessment is carried out by **remote sensing**, and airborne Lidar data are particularly useful for this purpose. The indicator does not evaluate the frequency or the areal extent of fluvial forms, but only their presence/absence in the floodplain.

Class A is assigned to reaches with existing typical fluvial forms of floodplains developed during the current hydrological regime conditions, i.e. in the case where these are hydrologically connected with the channel. Class B is assigned to reaches where the fluvial forms in the floodplain are not contemporary but can potentially be reconnected by restoration measures (e.g. excavation of secondary channels), or by natural morphological recovery (e.g. channel aggradation). To evaluate the potential to reactivate these fluvial forms, consistently with the indicators of channel adjustment (CA1 and CA2), aerial photos of 1930s-1960s period can be used to verify whether these forms were active during that time and then disconnected by bed incision.

## EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type	Partly confined or unconfined
<b>A</b>	<p>Floodplain morphological heterogeneity in relation to the presence of geomorphic units expected for a given river type (for a full description of the floodplain characteristics and geomorphic units see Nanson and Croke (1992) and the Geomorphic Units survey and classification System).</p> <p><i>Braided (types 8, 9, 15) or high energy anabranching (type 10):</i> undulating floodplain of abandoned channels and bars, swamps.</p> <p><i>Wandering (type 11):</i> abandoned channels, swamps, braid-bars, islands, back channels.</p> <p><i>Sinuuous or meandering with bars (types 13-14, 17-18) or pseudo-meandering (types 12, 16):</i> flat to undulating floodplain surface, ridges and swales (scrolled floodplain), abandoned meanders, oxbow lakes, wetlands and swamps.</p> <p><i>Low-energy single-thread (types 20, 21):</i> flat floodplain with low leveés, occasional crevasse channels and splays, occasional subdued ridge-swailes particularly close to the channel, abandoned channels, floodplain lakes, wetlands and swamps.</p> <p><i>Low-energy anabranching (anastomosed) (types 19, 22):</i> flat floodplain with extensive leveés, occasional crevasse channels and splays, abandoned anabranches, floodplain lakes, wetlands.</p>
<b>B</b>	<p>Presence of traces of fluvial landforms in the floodplain (abandoned during the last decades), now not in connection with the present channel but with possible reactivation by interventions or recovery processes.</p>
<b>C</b>	<p>Complete absence of floodplain morphological heterogeneity related to the absence of geomorphic units expected for a given river type-</p>

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

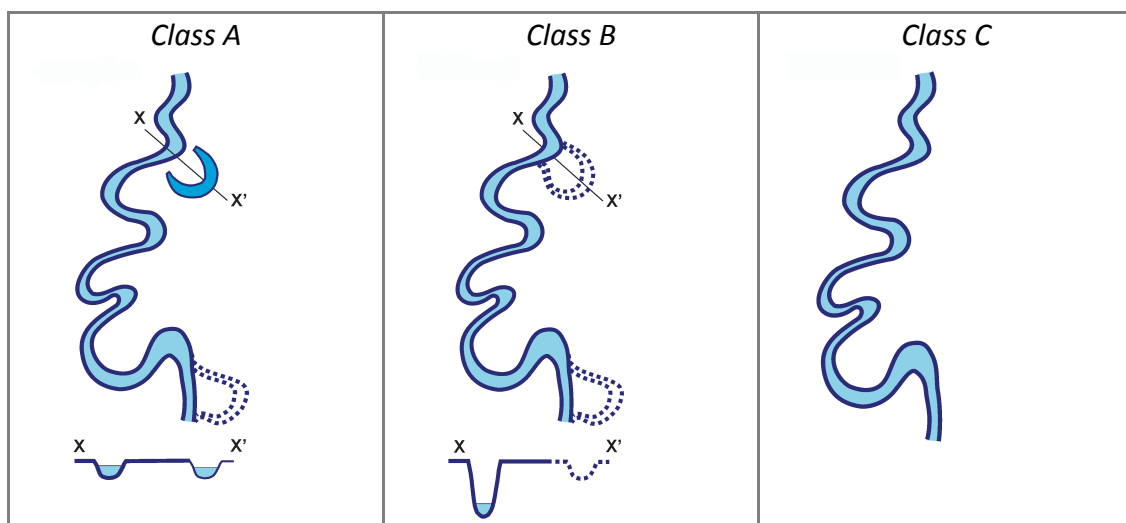


Figure A3. 19 Presence of typical fluvial forms in the alluvial plain.

**Class A:** presence of natural fluvial forms (e.g. abandoned meander, oxbow lake). **Class B:** traces of fluvial forms, now disconnected by the channel due to incision, but with possible reactivation. **Class C:** complete absence of fluvial forms in the alluvial plain.

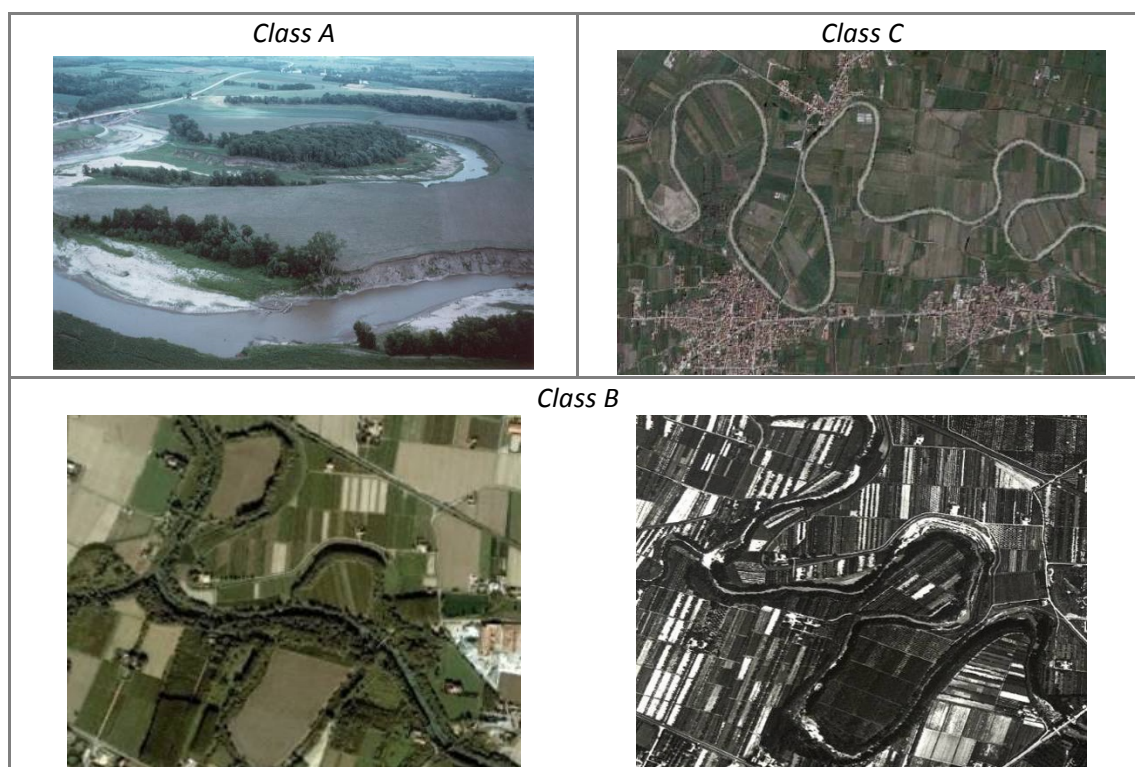


Figure A3. 20 Presence of typical fluvial forms in the floodplain.

*Class A*: meandering river with a recent cut-off. *Class C*: meandering river with complete absence of landforms in the plain. *Class B*: traces of abandoned meanders exits (photo on the left), disconnected from the channel because of bed incision. The observation of the aerial photos of the 1950's (photo on right) enables verification that these forms have been abandoned during the last decades.

### A3.3.9 F9: Cross-section variability

#### DESCRIPTION

This indicator evaluates variability in the channel cross-section (in terms of channel depth), that is expected for the channel morphology of the reach as a consequence of the presence and heterogeneity of geomorphic units. The morphological heterogeneity of cross-sections is highly relevant for physical habitat diversity in many river systems. In fact, homogenous cross-sections are usually associated with altered conditions (except in the case of Low-Energy reaches, which can naturally present a low diversity of forms). Such alterations can be related to the presence of artificial elements (e.g. bank protections), channel maintenance interventions (e.g. occasional or periodic channel resectioning), or to human related channel adjustments (e.g. incision due to sediment starvation).

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Site/Reach	<i>Lateral</i> : Channel
<b>Measurements</b> : Field survey and remote sensing	

The indicator is applied to all channel subject to all types of confinement.

In the case of **confined channels**, the assessment of the indicator focuses on the cross-sectional variability of water depth and velocity, mainly examining the channel bed and then secondarily its banks where, in most cases, the presence of zones of flow separation should

be expected. The indicator is applied exclusively in the **field** along one or more representative sites.

In partly confined or unconfined channels, the indicator is applied from **remote sensing** and in the **field** (cross-sectional depth variability) along one or more representative sites.

In the case of streams with **medium-high energy** (e.g. ERT types 8-14), the presence of **pioneer islands**, mainly along partly confined and unconfined channels, is an important element which contributes considerably to the cross-section heterogeneity. In the case of **braided channels** (types 8, 15), the depth variability in cross-section is naturally high (because of the multi-channel pattern), except in the case of interventions (e.g. resectioning, sediment or vegetation removal) which may maintain the overall braiding pattern but alter the heterogeneity in cross-section.

In the case of **Low-Energy streams** (ERT types 17-22) with natural absence of active bars and where the cross-section can be naturally quite homogeneous, the **presence of emergent macrophytes and vegetated marginal bars and benches** are important features contributing to the expected heterogeneity in the cross-section, and their removal can alter such variability. In Low-Energy channels crossing plains modelled by **fluvio-glacial processes** (e.g., in Northern Europe), heterogeneity in the cross section can be observed as a consequence of the natural **variability of bank and bed sediments** (e.g., from fine material to boulders).

The presence of **bank protections** is not sufficient for evaluating the channel as altered in terms of cross-sectional variability. In fact, these structures over time can become morphologically masked by vegetation and sediments, and therefore be characterised by near-natural cross-section variability. The presence of these structures is nonetheless evaluated through the indicators of artificiality. If channel banks are strongly geometrical (e.g. near vertical concrete walls, regular ripraps), the relative channel length occupied by bank protections is considered as altered only in the case of streams featuring a width-to-depth ratio  $\leq 10$ , i.e. where the banks represent a significant portion of the bankfull wetted channel. In other terms, in wide channels – relative to their depth – the presence of artificially regular banks alone is not sufficient for considering cross-section variability as altered.

In the case where **alterations** are **located asymmetrically**, i.e. only on one side of the river channel (e.g. presence of bank protection structures only on one bank in a relatively narrow stream), the altered reach length is counted as a percentage of the altered banks over the total bank length (sum of both banks) (e.g. an alteration along one bank for a length of 100 m corresponds to an altered reach length of 50 m).

## EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type	Confined
A	Absence or localized presence ( $\leq 5\%$ of the reach length) of alterations of the natural cross-sectional variability along the entire reach: a natural variability of the cross section (channel depth/velocity) exists – in relation to the presence of bedforms, bars, vegetation, boulders, influence of hillslopes.
B	Presence of alterations of the natural cross-sectional variability (channel depth/velocity) for a limited portion of the reach ( $\leq 33\%$ of the reach length).
C	Presence of alterations of the natural cross-sectional variability (channel depth/velocity) for a significant portion of the reach ( $> 33\%$ of the reach length).

Confinement type	Partly confined or unconfined
A	Absence or localized presence ( $\leq 5\%$ of the reach length) of alteration of the natural cross-sectional variability (channel depth) along the reach: a natural altimetric variability in cross-section exists, in relation to the presence of geomorphic units (active side or point bars, pioneer or mature islands, secondary channels, natural banks, emergent macrophytes, vegetated bars and benches in Low-Energy streams).
B	Presence of alteration of the natural cross-sectional variability (channel depth) for a limited portion of the reach ( $\leq 33\%$ of the reach length).
C	Presence of alteration of the natural cross-sectional variability (channel depth) for a significant portion of the reach ( $> 33\%$ ).

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE



Figure A3. 21 Variability of the cross-section.

(1) Pioneer islands, or (2) emergent aquatic macrophytes and benches, are important elements promoting cross-section heterogeneity in medium-high and Low-Energy streams, respectively.



### Confined channels

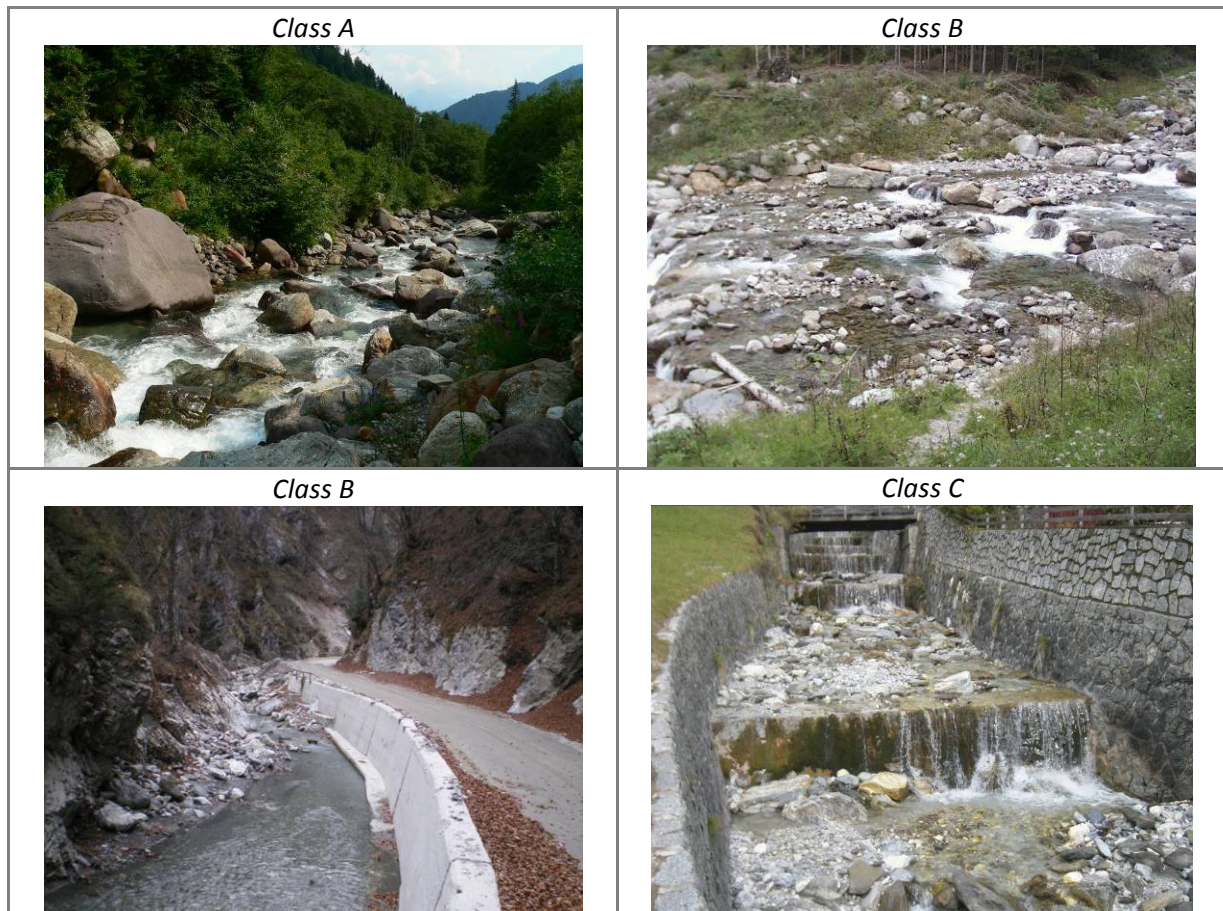


Figure A3. 22 Variability of the cross-section in confined channels.

**Class A:** absence of alterations of the natural heterogeneity in the cross-section. **Class B** (photo top right): alterations for a limited portion of the reach. **Class B** (photo bottom left): alterations on a substantial portion of the reach but only on one side (bank wall). **Class C:** complete alteration of the natural heterogeneity in the cross-section due to bank walls on both sides.

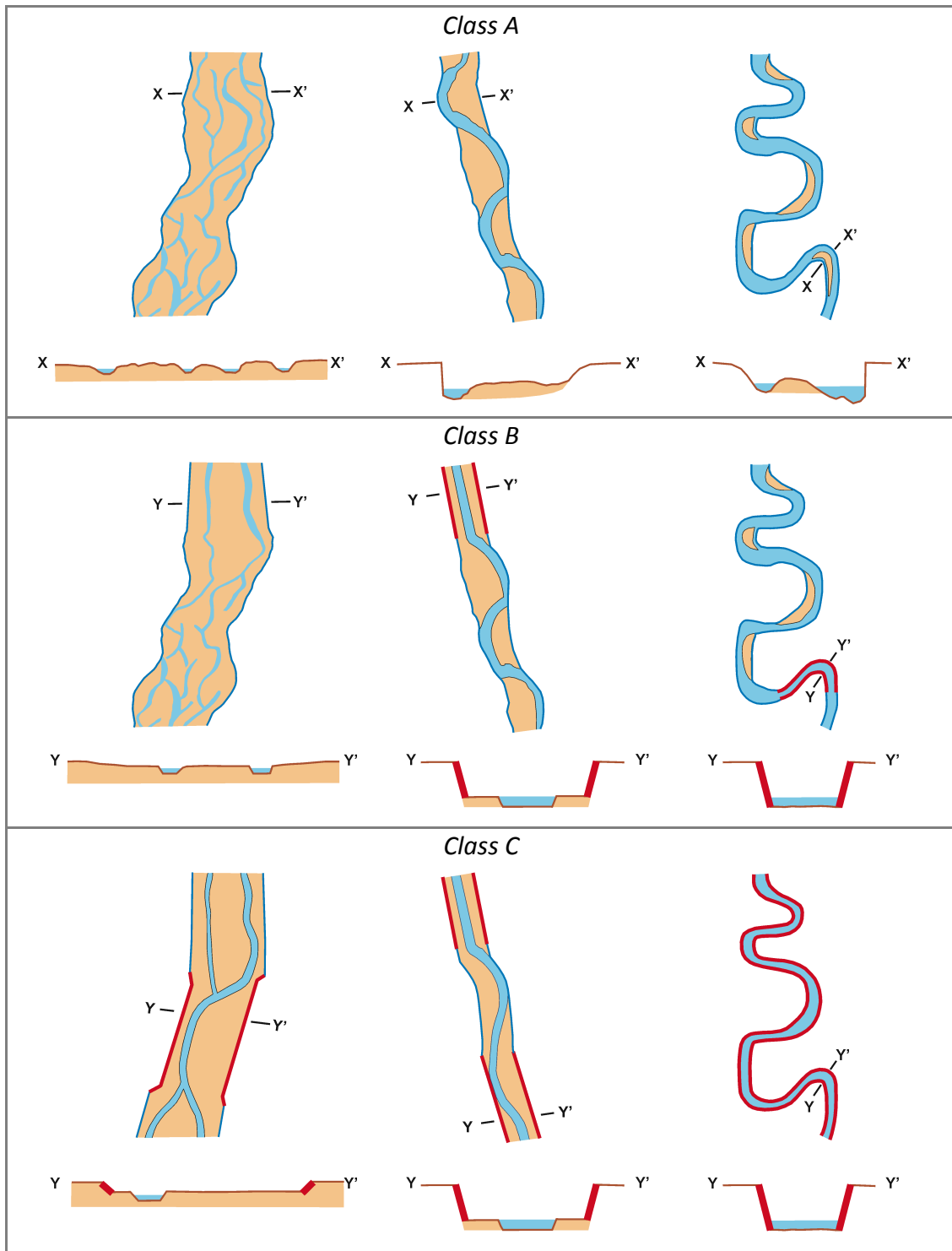
*Partly confined and unconfined channels*



**Figure A3. 23 Alteration of cross-section variability in partly- and unconfined channels.**

**(1) Cases of partial homogenization of the cross-section due to interventions. (2) Cross-section homogeneity extended for long reaches due to excessive artificiality.**





**Figure A3.24** Variability of the cross-section in partly- and unconfined channels.

Examples for multi-thread, transitional, and single-thread channels.

Class A: absence of alterations. Class B: alterations for a portion  $\leq 33\%$  of the reach length. Class C: alterations for a portion  $> 33\%$  of the reach length.

### A3.3.10 F10: Structure of the channel bed

#### DESCRIPTION

A stream in natural conditions exhibits heterogeneity of both bed and bar sediment size, structure and texture, except in some specific cases (i.e. confined bedrock channels or streams with fine bed sediment). The structure and heterogeneity of the channel bed sediment have several implications for the functionality of bedload processes and flow resistance, and are extremely important for the characteristics of aquatic physical habitats. This indicator takes into account possible alterations of the bed sediment, such as armouring, clogging, substrate outcrops, burial of river bed and bed revetments, related to morphological adjustments (e.g. bed incision or excessive aggradation due to anthropic interventions) or directly to human interventions (e.g. revetments). Armouring refers to the presence of a surface layer in which bed material size is significantly coarser than the sub-layer. Clogging refers to an excess of fine sediments (potentially linked to excessive soil erosion because of land use changes, or to alterations of hydrological regime) causing interstitial filling of the coarse sediment matrix and potentially smothering the channel bed (“blanket”: Brierley and Fryirs, 2005, or “embeddedness”: Sennatt et al., 2008). Burial or siltation is a special type of aggradation, where finer sediments (e.g. silt and sand) are deposited in a sufficiently thick layer to bury a coarser (e.g. gravel) river bed. Burial has not only direct ecological effects, but it also has morphological effects, since it buries bed forms and so simplifies bed morphological complexity. Similarly to clogging, burial is generally associated with an excessive input of fine sediments to the river channel caused by extensive bank erosion or soil erosion related to agricultural activity, land use changes (e.g. deforestation) or release of fine sediments from dams.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Multiple sites - reach	<i>Lateral</i> : Channel
<b>Measurements</b> : Field survey	

This indicator is applied to **confined channels** with a mobile bed as well as **partly confined and unconfined channels**. It is **not applied** to **bedrock and colluvial confined channels**, or **sand-bed rivers**, because of their natural bed substrate homogeneity, and in the case of **deep, non-wadeable rivers**, as it is not possible to visually observe the substrate.

There are differences between the cases of **confined channels** and partly confined or unconfined channels. In the former case, armouring is not considered as an indicator of alteration, because confined channels with a mobile bed have a naturally strong heterogeneity of sediments. Therefore, **armouring is assessed only in the case of partly confined and unconfined channels**. For partly confined and unconfined channels, some heterogeneity of bed substrate size is also considered as normal, as a consequence of the variability of morphological units (bars, baseflow channels, riffles, pools), as well as within the same unit. However, a pronounced armouring is considered as an alteration (see below). Similarly, the presence of **clogging** can be normal in particular situations (e.g. in some pools or along a stream close to hillslopes composed of clay), but it is considered an alteration when it is evident and present in various portions of the reach. In the case of very **Low-Energy streams** that are characterised by fine bed sediment, where, as a consequence, armouring and clogging can not occur, the evaluation of the indicator is based on the

possible occurrence of bedrock outcrops, burial, or revetments (class B is therefore excluded for Low-Energy rivers).

A **field** evaluation is necessary for this indicator. The evaluation can start from a series of representative **sites** to ensure that various portions of the reach are assessed. In many cases, the assessment performed at a number of sites is sufficient to determine the class, but in more problematic cases (for example, in the case of contrasting evidence), a rapid reconnaissance along the whole reach may be necessary.

A quantitative assessment of armouring would require sediment sampling and measurements of the surface layer and sub-layer, which are beyond the scope of this procedure. Therefore **armouring**, as well as **clogging**, are **visually assessed**. An evaluation is necessary, at least along the visited sites, of the percentage in length of the portions of the reach altered by armouring or clogging. Clogging and/or armouring are unlikely to occur across the whole bed surface and all the geomorphic units. For example, clogging is not normally expected across units with relatively high flow velocity (e.g., rapids, steps), and armouring is also uncommon on units with low flow velocity (e.g., pools). Therefore, if a portion of the reach shows evidence of armouring (or clogging) across most of the geomorphic units where has the potential to occur, the entire length of this portion is considered as altered.

The assessment of **burial** requires that the operator wades the river at some point and uses a rod to verify whether a coarser substrate (e.g. gravel or sandy gravel) exists below a surficial layer of fine sediments (clay, silt, sand). Burial differs from clogging, in which the coarse substrate is visible but with an interstitial filling by finer sediment (typically silt and clay). In the case of burial the original bed substrate is completely buried by a sufficiently thick layer (i.e. at least 2 cm) of finer sediment.

An additional element of alteration is **bedrock outcropping**. However, it requires careful evaluation, especially in the case of confined channels, where it is considered as an alteration only when it is evidently related to bed-incision due to human causes, for example when there is evidence or information of a previous alluvial substrate that has been completely removed due to bed incision. Even in the cases of partly confined and unconfined channels, an alteration is taken into consideration only when this is clearly related to bed-incision due to human causes, that is, in alluvial reaches with a mobile bed sufficiently far from the hillslopes. It must be excluded, however, in those cases with hillslopes not far from the channel, where natural outcrops can occur. When the bedrock outcropping is related to recent bed-incision due to human causes, this determines the assignation to class *C1* (occasional outcropping) or *C2* (widespread outcropping, i.e. >33%). Bedrock outcropping must be evaluated at the **reach scale**.

Finally, the widespread presence of **bed revetments** (>33%) determines the assignation to class *C2*. As for bedrock outcropping, this must be evaluated at the **reach scale**.

## EXTENDED ANSWERS

<b>Confinement type</b>		Partly confined or unconfined
<b>Range of application</b>		Not evaluated for bedrock or colluvial (ERT types from 1 to 3), or for deep rivers when it is not possible to observe the channel bed
<b>A</b>	Natural heterogeneity of bed sediments in relation to the different sedimentary units (steps, pools, riffles, etc.), with absence of or localized situations of clogging.	
<b>B</b>	Evident clogging occurring along $\leq 50\%$ of the reach length.	
<b>C1</b>	Evident and widespread clogging occurring along $> 50\%$ of the reach length, or evident burial occurring along $\leq 50\%$ of the reach length, or occasional substrate outcrops ( $\leq 33\%$ of the reach length) related to recent bed-incision of the alluvial substrate (for human causes).	
<b>C2</b>	Evident and widespread burial occurring along $> 50\%$ of the reach length , or widespread substrate alteration by bed revetments (any type) ( $> 33\%$ of the reach length), or widespread substrate outcrops ( $> 33\%$ of the reach length) related to recent bed-incision of the alluvial substrate (for human causes).	

<b>Confinement type</b>		Partly confined or unconfined
<b>Range of application</b>		Not evaluated for deep rivers when it is not possible to observe the channel bed
<b>A</b>	Natural heterogeneity of bed sediments in relation to the different sedimentary units (bars, channel bed, pools, riffles, etc.) and also within the same unit, with absence of or localized situations of armouring and/or clogging.	
<b>B</b>	Evident armouring or clogging occurring along $\leq 50\%$ of the length.	
<b>C1</b>	Evident and widespread armouring or clogging occurring along $> 50\%$ of the length, or evident burial occurring along $\leq 50\%$ of the reach length, or occasional substrate outcrops ( $\leq 33\%$ of the reach length) related to incision of the alluvial substrate.	
<b>C2</b>	Evident and widespread burial occurring along $> 50\%$ of the reach length , or widespread substrate outcrops ( $> 33\%$ of the reach length) due to incision of the alluvial substrate or widespread substrate alteration by bed revetments (any type) ( $> 33\%$ of the reach length).	

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

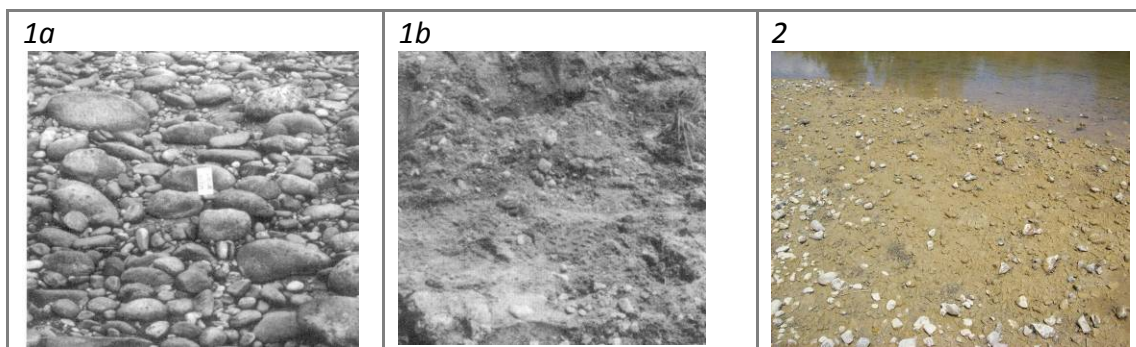


Figure A3. 25 Some types of alterations of the substrate.  
(1) Armouring (a: superficial layer; b: sub-layer). (2) Clogging.

### Confined channels



Figure A3. 26 Alteration of substrate in confined channels.

**Class A:** natural heterogeneity of substrate in a confined channel. **Class B or C1:** presence of clogging (the assignment to Class B or C1 will depend on its extension in the reach). **Class C2:** complete alteration of substrate because of widespread bed revetments.

### Partly confined and unconfined channels

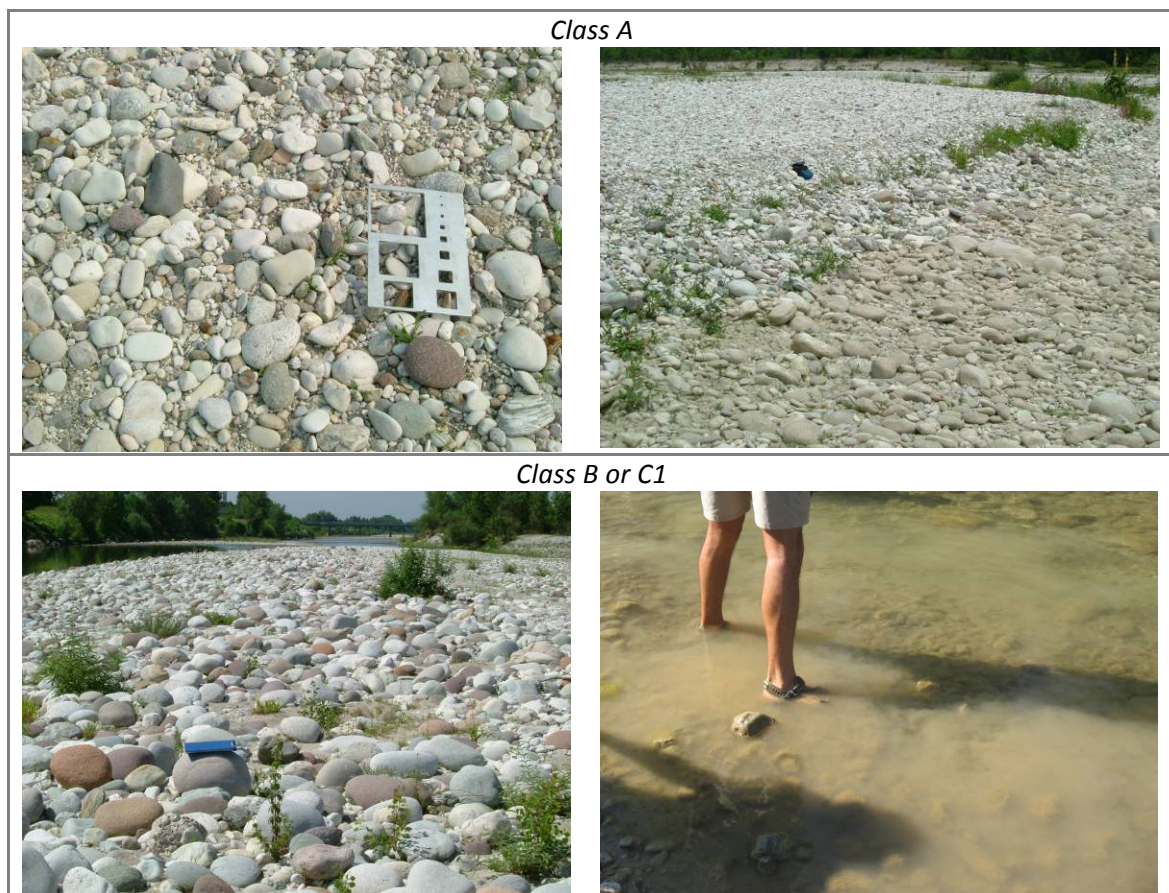


Figure A3. 27 Alterations of substrate in partly- and unconfined channels.

**Class A:** natural sediment heterogeneity in an unconfined channel. **Class B or C1:** presence of armouring (photo on left) or clogging (photo on right) (assignment to Class B or C1 will depend on the extension of armouring and/or clogging along the reach). **Class C2:** bedrock outcroppings due to bed incision (photo on left) or completely altered substrate because of bed revetment (photo on right).



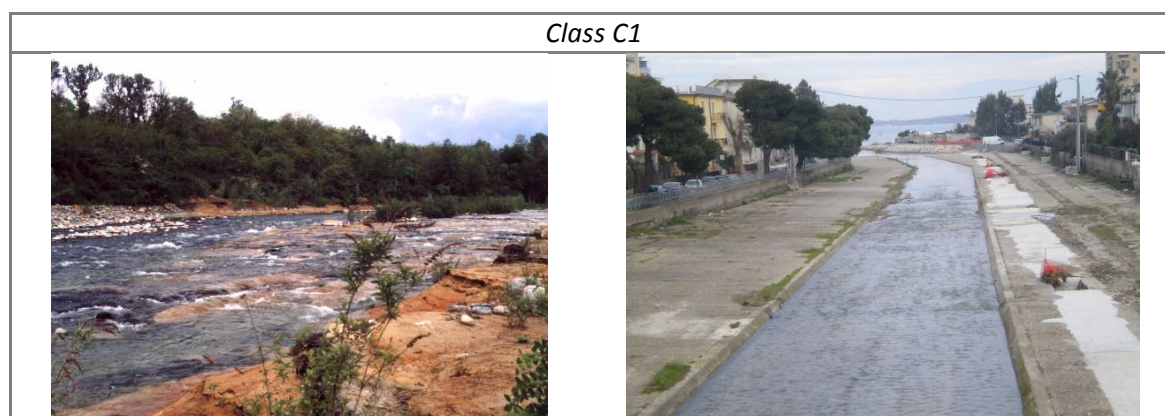


Figure A3. 27 (continued) *Class C2*: bedrock outcroppings due to bed incision (photo on left) or completely altered substrate because of bed revetment (photo on right).

### A3.3.11 F11: Presence of in-channel large wood

#### DESCRIPTION

An evaluation is carried out to determine whether altered conditions exist compared to the expected presence of large wood along the reach. Large wood includes trees, trunks, branches, root wads having a length > 1 m and diameter > 10 cm. This material has several effects on geomorphic-hydraulic processes, and has various implications for ecological processes (habitat diversity, input of organic matter, etc.). On the other hand, it is widely recognized that this material may represent an additional flood hazard factor.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Multiple sites - reach	<i>Lateral</i> : Channel
Measurements: Field survey	

The indicator is evaluated for both types of streams (**confined and partly confined - unconfined**), but is not applied in **tundra areas in northern Europe**, where woody vegetation is naturally absent. Given the high spatial and temporal variability of the quantity of wood material, it is not possible to define precise values for the number of woody elements to observe. A reach, or a portion of it, is evaluated as altered when the presence of wood is extremely limited or completely absent (approximately < 5 elements every 100 m of channel length).

The operator carries out the evaluation based on **field observations**. In some cases, the presence of wood can be altered only for a portion of the reach (for example where there has been a removal of wood in only part of the whole reach). Therefore field observations must be carried out on a sufficient number of sites in order to sufficiently assess the whole reach. When, in all the visited sites a significant presence of wood is observed, the reach can be assigned to class A. Where wood is absent in one or more sites (or there is extremely limited presence), then an evaluation of the extent of the reach with absent wood is necessary to determine whether to assign the reach to class B or C (see extended answers). In some cases (very high resolution images), remote sensing can be useful, and the evaluation can be carried out for greater reach lengths and eventually at the reach scale.

The evaluation area includes the channel (including islands) and the banks (wood on the floodplain is not considered). Additional rules accounting for particular situations of natural wood scarcity concern the case of large rivers (bankfull width > mean tree height), relatively

deep (mean bankfull depth > mean tree diameter), with few sizeable bars and/or boulders. These are considered as **“transport” reaches, i.e. where deposition is not likely**. This is the case for relatively large rivers with plane bed morphology (confined) or single-thread channels, where some large wood should be present along the banks, except in case of rocky banks and/or with a natural absence of tree vegetation. In these latter cases, class A is assigned.

Lastly, the indicator is **not evaluated** for reaches **above the tree-line** or where riparian vegetation is completely absent due to natural factors in the reach and in the upstream reaches. The indicator is evaluated in reaches where the vegetation is locally absent (e.g. local hillslope banks), because a certain amount of wood is expected to be supplied from the upstream reaches.

#### EXTENDED ANSWERS

<b>Confinement type</b>	All types
<b>Range of application</b>	Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation, such as in north-european tundra
<b>A</b>	Significant presence of large wood (entire plants, trunks, branches, root wads) within the channel and/or on the banks along the whole reach. Or absence of large wood in case of reach of wood transport (bankfull width > mean tree height, bankfull mean depth > mean tree diameter, absence of significant obstacles, e.g. bars and large boulders).
<b>B</b>	Very limited presence or absence of large wood for $\leq 50\%$ of the reach length
<b>C</b>	Very limited presence or absence of large wood for $>50\%$ of the reach length.

#### ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

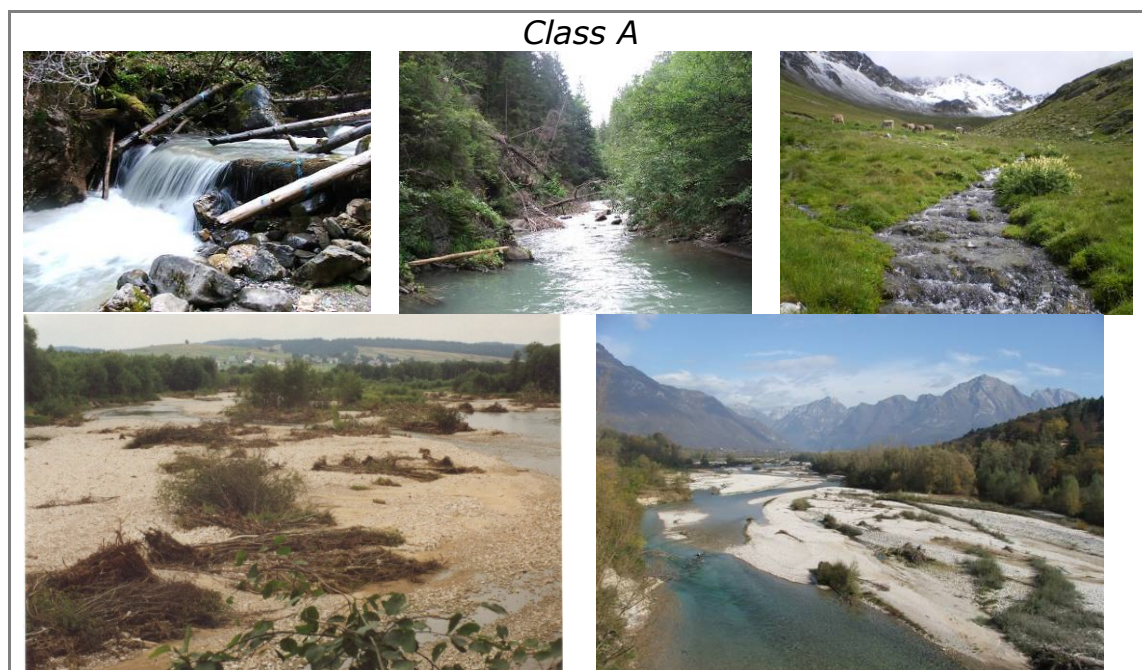


Figure A3. 28 Presence of large wood.

**Class A:** natural presence of large wood in a steep confined channel with limited width and (cascade, first row on left), and in a wider and less steep confined channel with (plane bed morphology, center); natural absence of riparian vegetation and large wood because the reach is above the tree-line (right); natural presence of large wood in unconfined channels (photos in central row).

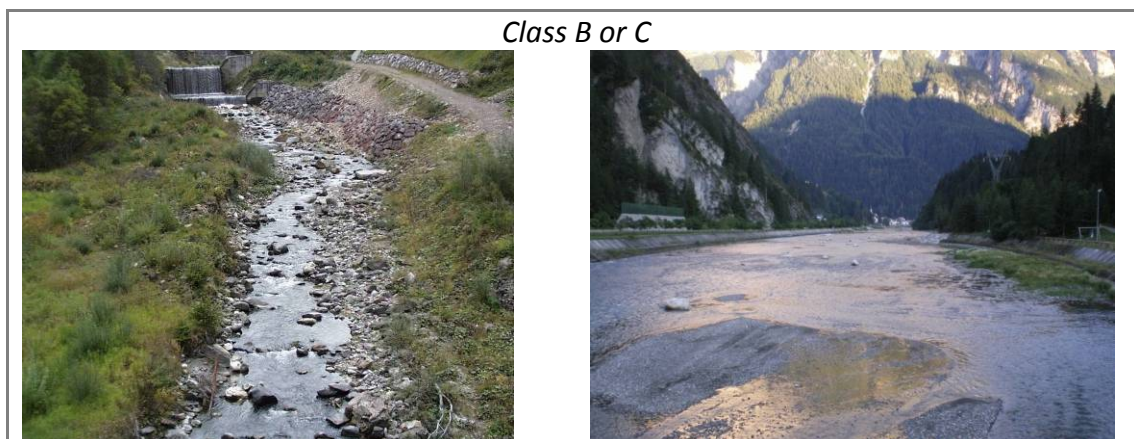


Figure A3. 28 (continued) Presence of large wood.

Class B or C: examples of channels with absence of large wood because of recent interventions of removal (photos in the lower row) (assignment to Class B or C will depend on the extension of the alteration along the reach).

### Vegetation in the fluvial corridor

The next two indicators (*F12* and *F13*) concern the **naturally functioning riparian vegetation**, i.e. the expected woody and shrub vegetation typically with a patchy, mixed-age structure, and freely interacting with fluvial processes (erosion, sedimentation, flooding). The vegetation assessed by the indicator *F12* is not limited to the riparian zone immediately adjacent to the riverbanks, but is extended to the overall **river corridor**. The latter includes the area extending from the channel to the hillslopes (or the old terraces), theoretically including the entire floodplain, and that is functional to the normal geomorphic processes (flow resistance, bank stabilization, wood recruitment, sediment trapping, etc.).

Only the **geomorphic functioning** of the vegetation is considered, so species identification is not required. The width of functional vegetation in the fluvial corridor and linear extension along the banks are the main aspects taken in consideration since these factors are the primary determinants of their level of interaction with the morphological processes of erosion, sedimentation and flooding. **Commercial short-rotation plantations** (e.g. *Populus* sp., *Eucalyptus* sp., *Paulownia* sp., conifers etc.) are considered as **partially functional**, as they are characterized by lower tree densities than natural riparian forests and consequently do not fully perform their geomorphic functions. In such cases, a lower score is assigned to this type of vegetation, i.e. it is counted as corresponding to 50% (of width or extension, for *F12* and *F13* respectively) of functional vegetation. Other, low density, commercial plantations of woody vegetation (e.g. olive tree, grape vines, apple trees, etc.) are considered as **not functional**. However, non-commercial reforested areas that are characterized by higher tree densities, comparable to those of naturally-formed riparian woodland, are considered to be fully functional.

In order to be considered as **functional**, woody vegetation should be **fully connected to the relevant geomorphic processes** (i.e. flooding, sediment erosion and deposition). Therefore, vegetation separated from the river by **artificial levées** is excluded, whereas vegetation bordering protected (artificially reinforced) river banks is taken into consideration because it can still be flooded allowing it to provide flow resistance, supply wood, and trap sediment. In the case of confined channels, **roads** interrupt this connection (similarly to the artificial levees for unconfined channels).



Indicators *F12* and *F13* are not applied **above the natural tree-line**. In Italy, for example, this limit is quite variable, (approximately around 1,800 ÷ 2,300 m a.s.l.) and, in many cases, **grazing** has lowered this limit: in such a case, it is considered as an alteration. The two indicators are not applied in the case of areas of **tundra in northern Europe**, where vegetation is naturally absent. Lastly, in the case of particular climatic and soil conditions such as in **Mediterranean regions**, dense woody vegetation may not develop within the river corridor, and so a sparse cover of trees and shrubs can be considered as functional vegetation.

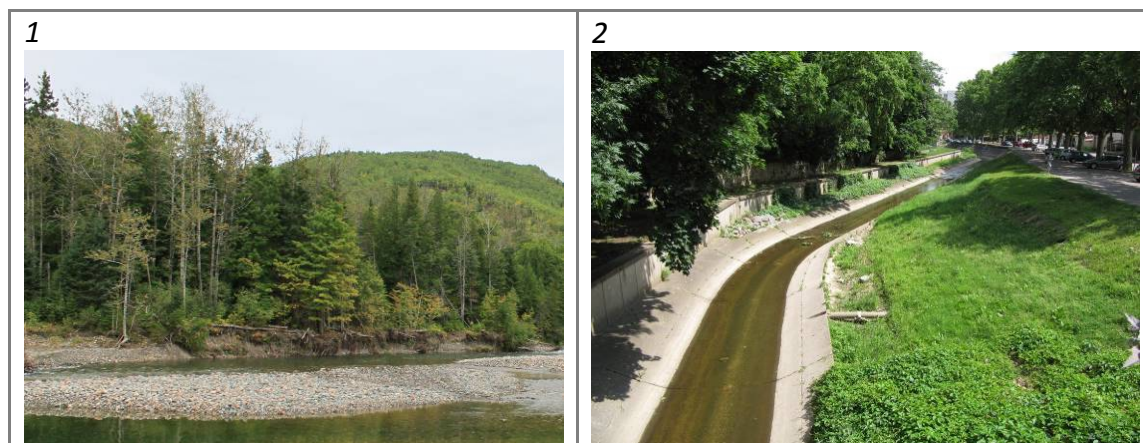


Figure A3. 29 Vegetation in the fluvial corridor  
(1) Presence of vegetation connected with the channel in a partly confined reach; (2) absence of vegetation (right) or vegetation disconnected by the stream channel because of the presence of walls.

### A3.3.12 F12: Width of functional vegetation

#### DESCRIPTION

This indicator assesses the average width (or areal extension) of **functional riparian vegetation in the fluvial corridor** directly connected with the channel. In the case of **confined channels**, the functional width is evaluated along the portions of floodplain that are potentially present, and along the adjacent **hillslopes for a strip of 50 m on each side** of the river corridor (starting from the base of the hillslopes as in the case of *F3*), excluding the cases of near vertical hillslopes or where landslides are present, where woody vegetation may be naturally absent. In the case of **partly confined and unconfined channels**, the width of functional vegetation is evaluated as a function of channel width.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Reach	<i>Lateral</i> : Entire floodplain (partly confined / unconfined); Floodplain/ adjacent hillslopes (confined)
<b>Measurements</b> : Remote sensing	

The evaluation is carried out by **remote sensing** and **GIS** analysis, by delimiting the woody/shrub vegetation in the river corridor, up to a limit of 50 m in the case of confined channels. The width includes the vegetation on both sides of the channel. Note that **islands** within the channel are **included** in the computation (including the case of anabranching channels), reflecting their potential contribution in terms of flow resistance, sediment trapping and large wood delivery. In the case of **partly confined channels**, where the

functional vegetation occupies the entire available width (i.e. the entire floodplain), class A is attributed to the reach even if the width of the functional vegetation is lower than  $nW$  (see table below).

**Partially functional vegetation** (e.g. *Populus* sp., *Eucalyptus* sp., *Paulownia* sp., conifers etc.) is considered as corresponding to 50% in width (or area) of functional vegetation.

#### EXTENDED ANSWERS

<b>Confinement type</b>	All types
<b>Range of application</b>	Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation, such as in north-european tundra
<b>A</b>	<p>A high width of functional vegetation:  for <i>confined channels</i>, connected functional vegetation occupying &gt; 90% of hillslopes (50 m for each side, excluding portions with rock or landslides) and the adjacent floodplain (if present). The functional vegetation includes woody tree or shrub species with significant cover (i.e. &gt; 33% of the width). In Mediterranean regions, functional vegetation can only include spontaneous shrub species.</p> <p>for <i>partly confined - unconfined channels</i>, connected functional vegetation with a total width (sum of the two sides) of at least <math>nW</math>, where <math>W</math> is the channel width, <math>n = 2</math> for single-thread or anabranching channels (types 10, 12-14, 16-22), <math>n = 1</math> for braided or wandering channels (types 8, 9, 11, 15). The functional width includes either woody and shrub species, with a significant presence of the former (&gt; 33% of the width occupied by woody vegetation). In Mediterranean regions, functional vegetation can only include spontaneous shrub species.</p>
<b>B</b>	<p>A medium width of functional vegetation:  for <i>confined channels</i>, connected functional vegetation occupying 33÷90% of hillslopes (50 m for each side, excluding portions with rock or landslides) and the adjacent floodplain (if present). The functional vegetation includes woody tree or shrub species with significant cover (i.e. &gt; 33% of the width).</p> <p>Or, as in case A, but with largely prevailing shrub species (i.e. woody vegetation ≤ 33% of the functional width) except for specific climatic contexts (e.g. Mediterranean regions), where woody vegetation may not naturally develop.</p> <p>for <i>partly confined - unconfined channels</i>, connected functional vegetation with a total width (sum of the two sides) between <math>0.5W</math> and <math>nW</math>, where <math>W</math> is the channel width, <math>n = 2</math> for single-thread or anabranching channels (types 10, 12-14, 16-22), <math>n = 1</math> for braided or wandering channels (types 8, 9, 11, 15).</p> <p>Or, as in case A, but with largely prevailing shrub species (i.e. woody vegetation ≤ 33% of the functional width).</p>
<b>C</b>	<p>A limited width of functional vegetation:  for <i>confined channels</i>, connected functional vegetation ≤ 33% of hillslopes (50 m for each side, excluding portions with rock or landslides), and of adjacent plain (if present). The functional vegetation includes woody tree or shrub species with significant cover (i.e. &gt; 33% of the width). Or, as in case B, but with largely prevailing shrub species (i.e. woody vegetation ≤ 33% of the functional width) except for specific climatic contexts (e.g. Mediterranean regions), where woody vegetation may not naturally develop.</p> <p>for <i>partly confined - unconfined channels</i>, connected functional vegetation with a total width (sum of the two sides) ≤ <math>0.5W</math> (any channel typology), where <math>W</math> is the channel width.</p> <p>Or, as in case B, but with largely prevailing shrub species (i.e. woody vegetation ≤ 33% of the functional width).</p>

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

### *Confined channels*

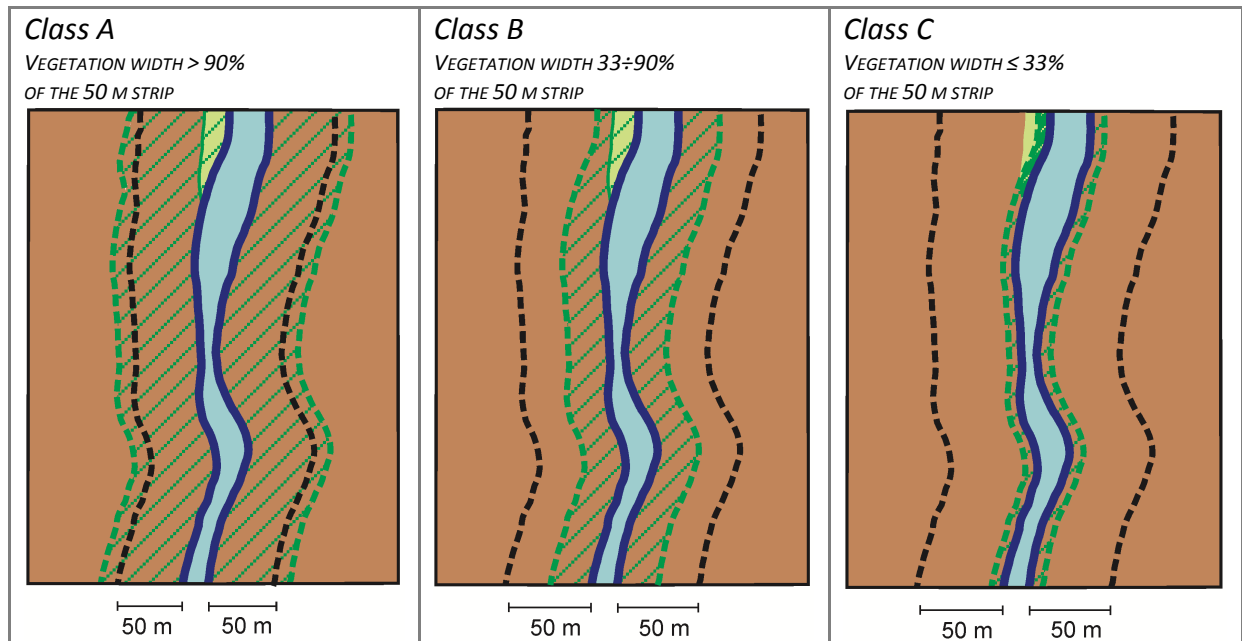


Figure A3. 30 Width of functional vegetation in confined channels.

**Class A:** the vegetation corridor occupies > 90% of the plain and adjacent hillslopes (for a strip of 50 m for each side, represented by the dotted black line). **Class B:** the vegetation corridor is between 33 and 90%. **Class C:** the vegetation corridor is extremely limited ( $\leq 33\%$ ).

### Partly confined and unconfined channels

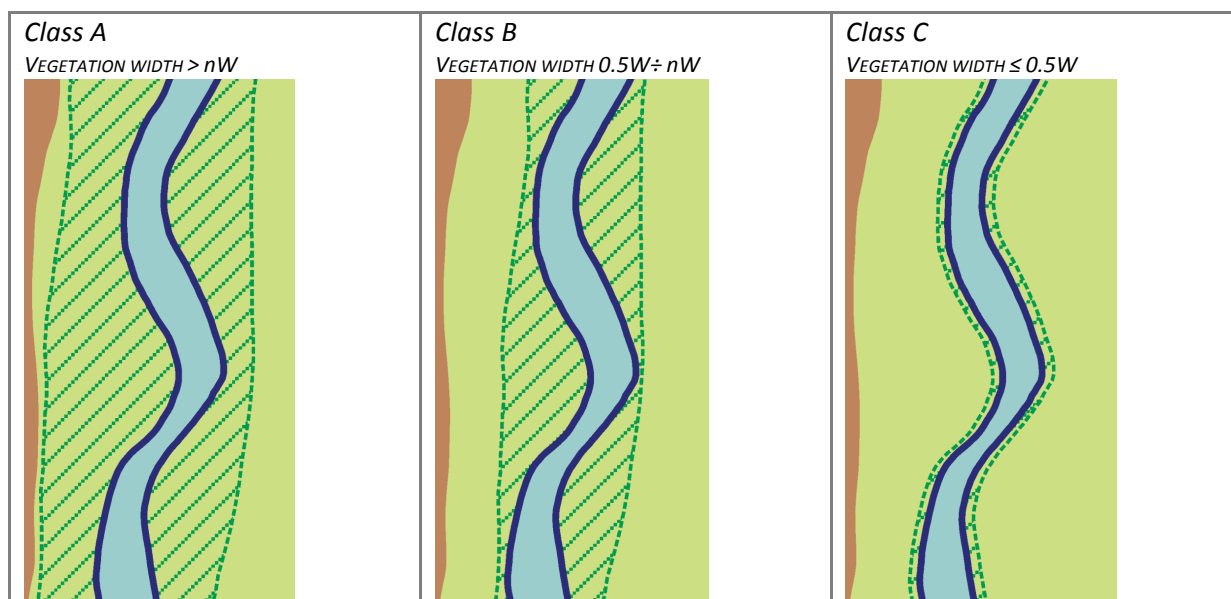


Figure A3. 31 Width of fluvial corridor in partly- and unconfined channels.

**Class A:** the vegetation corridor is sufficiently wide, having a width  $> nW$  ( $W$ : mean channel width); **Class B:** the vegetation corridor has a medium width, being included between  $0.5W$  and  $nW$ ; **Class C:** the vegetation corridor is extremely narrow, having a width  $\leq 0.5W$ .

### ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

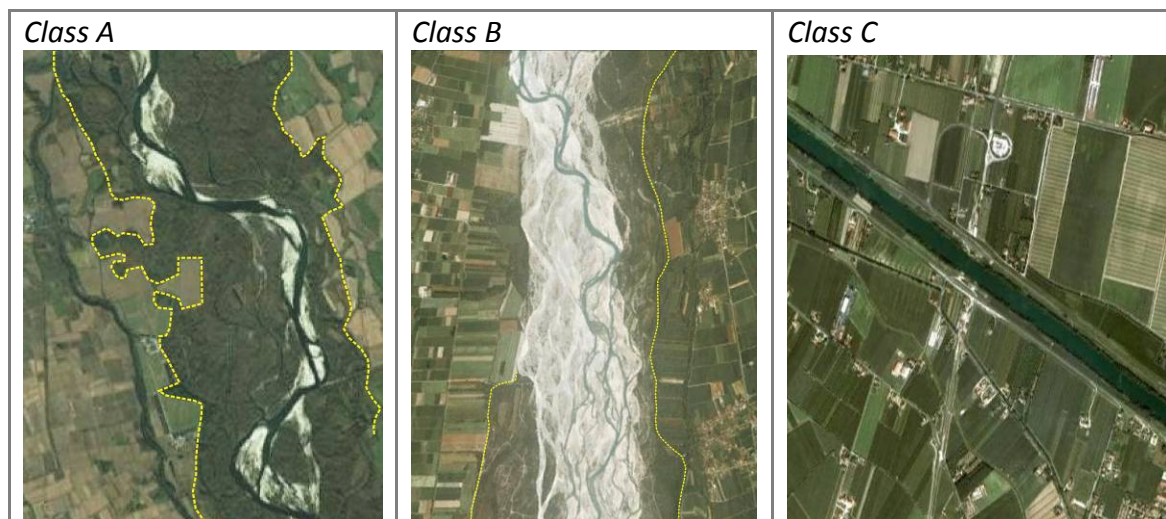


Figure A3. 32 Width of functional vegetation in partly confined and unconfined channels.

**Class A:** the vegetation corridor is very wide compared to the channel width. **Class B:** the vegetation corridor has a medium width. **Class C:** the vegetation corridor is almost absent.

### A3.3.13 F13: Linear extension of functional vegetation

#### DESCRIPTION

This indicator evaluates the longitudinal continuity of **functional riparian vegetation along the banks**, expressed as a percentage of the length covered by riparian vegetation against the total length of the reach (both banks), and for any areal extension. The indicator refers to the functional riparian vegetation in the river corridor zones external to the channel, therefore **islands** are **not considered**, except in the case of large islands separating anabranch channels in anabranching rivers. Lines of ornamental trees on the channel edge are considered as partially functional, and so they are treated in the same way as commercial plantations (see previous indicator).

Spatial scale	
<b>Longitudinal:</b> Multiple sites – reach	<b>Lateral:</b> Banks
<b>Measurements:</b> Remote sensing	

The evaluation of the **linear extension of riparian vegetation** is carried out by **remote sensing** and **GIS** analysis. The same delimitation of woody/shrub vegetation in the river corridor connected with the channel carried out for *F12* is used, measuring the length (sum of the two banks) in direct contact with the channel. This length is compared with the total potential length (sum of the two banks) where functional vegetation could be present (i.e. excluding portions of banks comprised of rock or affected by landslides). In the case of anabranching channels, the length is evaluated for all anabranch channels and the total potential length is the sum of the bank lengths of all the anabranches. When remote images are difficult to interpret (e.g. for confined channels), a **site** scale check may be required (e.g. to identify banks comprised of rock).

**Partially functional vegetation** (e.g. *Populus* sp., *Eucalyptus* sp., *Paulownia* sp., conifers etc.) is considered as corresponding to 50% in linear extension of functional vegetation.

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

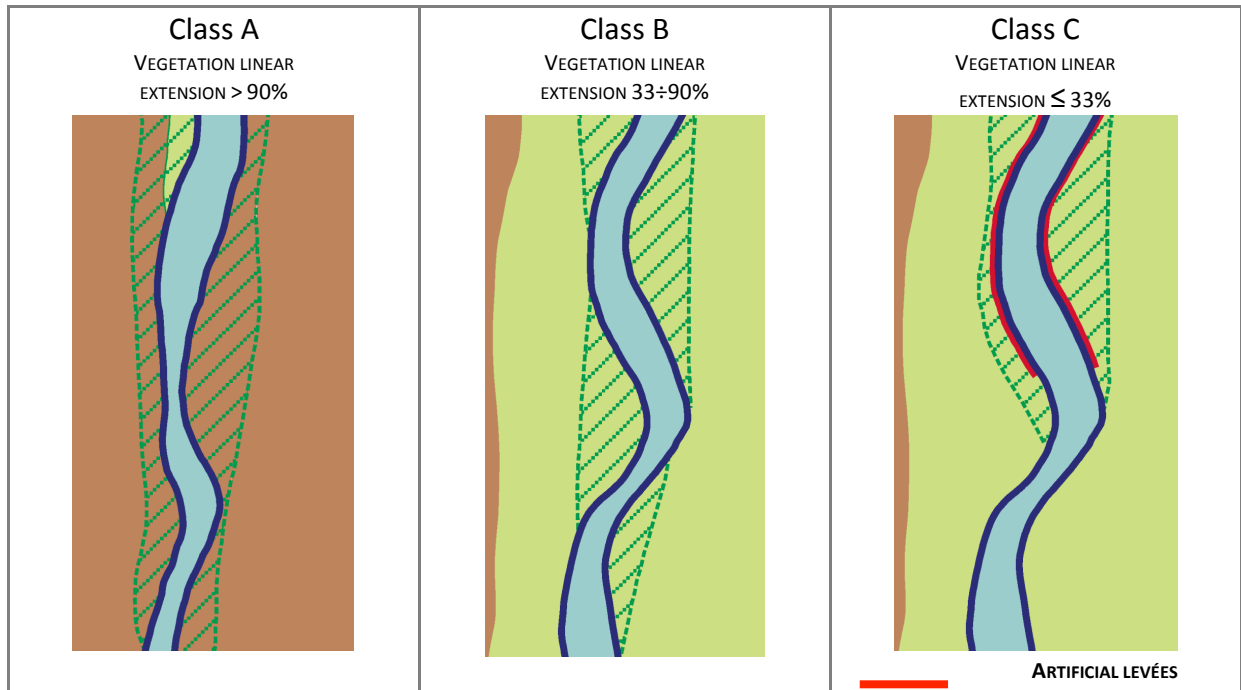


Figure A3. 33 Linear extension of the functional riparian vegetation along the banks.

**Class A:** the linear extension is very high (> 90% of the total length of both banks). **Class B:** the linear extension is lower than 90% but higher than 33%. **Class C:** although a vegetation corridor exists for about half of the reach, most of it is disconnected because of the existence of artificial levées.

## EXTENDED ANSWERS

<b>Confinement type</b>	All types
<b>Range of application</b>	Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation, such as in north-european tundra
<b>A</b>	Linear extension of connected functional (riparian) vegetation for > 90% of maximum available bank length (i.e. sum of both banks excluding those comprised of rock or landslides). Presence of either tree or shrub species (> 33% of the length of functional vegetation). In dry Mediterranean regions, functional vegetation may only include spontaneous shrub species. In the case of presence of anabranches, the reach length is the sum of the lengths of the anabranches.
<b>B</b>	Linear extension of connected functional vegetation for a length of 33÷90% of maximum available length (i.e. sum of both banks excluding those in rock or landslides). In the case of presence of anabranches, the reach length is the sum of the lengths of the anabranches. Or, as in case A, but with shrub species largely prevailing (woody species ≤ 33% of the length of the functional vegetation).
<b>C</b>	Linear extension of connected functional vegetation for a length of ≤ 33% of maximum available bank length (i.e. sum of both banks excluding those comprised of rock or landslides). In the case of presence of anabranches, the reach length is the sum of the lengths of the anabranches. Or, as in case B, but with shrub species largely prevailing (woody species ≤ 33% of the length of the functional vegetation).

### A3.4 Artificiality

#### Upstream alteration of longitudinal continuity

The first four indicators of artificiality consider the alteration of the driving variables for channel morphology, which are water discharges and sediment transport. It is useful to conceptually separate the alterations of the same variables occurring upstream from those occurring within the reach. Indicators *A1* and *A2* are the only two concerned with the conditions existing upstream (catchment scale) of the analyzed reach, while the next two indicators *A3* and *A4* concern the alterations of the same characteristics, but within the reach.

For this purpose, in the case of a **structure** (e.g. a dam) **located at the boundary between two reaches** (e.g. between an upstream reach *n1* and a downstream reach *n2*), **conventionally the structure is assigned to the upstream reach** (Figure 34). However, while the effects of the structure are considered as alterations in the reach (by the indicators *A3* and *A4*) for the upstream reach *n1*, they are accounted as upstream alterations (by the indicators *A1* and *A2*) for the downstream reach *n2*.

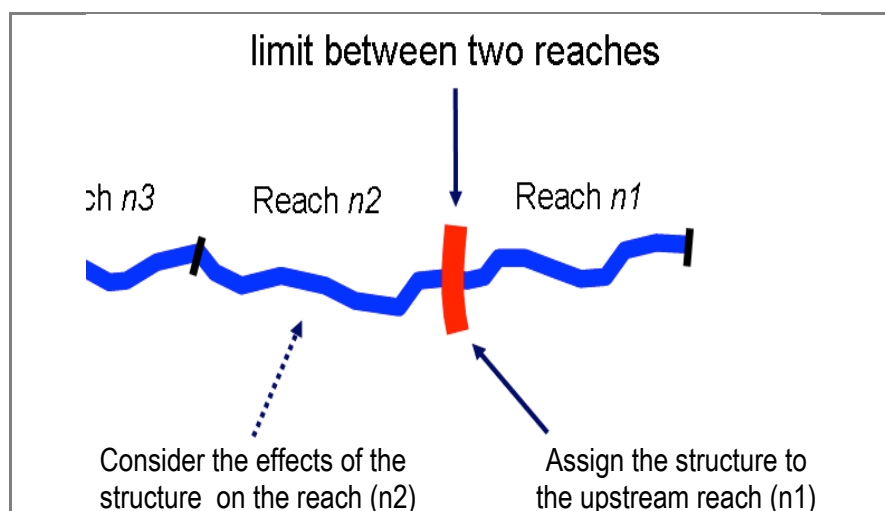


Figure A3. 34 Rule for assigning a transversal structure that coincides with the limit between two reaches and its effects on the alteration of sediment and water discharges.



#### **A3.4.1 A1: Upstream alteration of flows**

This indicator evaluates the overall alterations of flows occurring upstream of the reach. The indicator is split into **two sub-indicators** as follows:

1. **A1<sub>M</sub>**: evaluates possible alterations of flow conditions which may have relevant effects on channel morphology (i.e. may cause changes of the bankfull channel size because of morphological adjustments). The use of this sub-indicator alone permits calculation of the **Morphological Quality Index (MQI)**.

2. **A1<sub>H</sub>**: concerns evident flow alterations, which, although impairing some biological processes, may have small effects on channel morphology (i.e. may cause changes of some of the geomorphic units, but not having significant effects on the bankfull channel size). The use of this sub-indicator, in addition to the previous one, allows the calculation of the overall **Hydro-Morphological Quality Index (HMQI)**.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Upstream catchment	<i>Lateral</i> : Entire floodplain (including recent terraces)
<b>Measurements</b> : Map layer of interventions, remote sensing	

##### **A3.4.1.1 A1M: Upstream alteration of flows with potentially relevant effects on channel morphology**

###### **DEFINITION**

This indicator evaluates possible alterations of flow conditions which may have a significant effect on morphological processes. Therefore, the main emphasis is on the reduction or increase of channel-forming discharges and/or discharges with higher return intervals affected by interventions at the catchment scale, such as dams, impoundment (i.e. water retention by weirs), discharge diversions or water abstractions, spillways, retention basins, etc. Specific cases of alteration of low flows (release of constant flows downstream of dams) may also have morphological effects and so are also considered.

The indicator does not directly evaluate the effect of these structures on sediment discharge, which is assessed by the following indicator (A2). In the case of a diversion where the water is returned to a downstream reach, only the river portion between the water diversion and the restitution is considered as altered. The indicator is not applied to the most upstream reach of a river, except when the water diversion occurs at the source.

Identification of existing interventions having effects on discharges can be carried out using a map layer of interventions and remote sensing. This indicator also requires data and information about the management of the structures (e.g. dams) and their effects on discharges. This can be achieved from agencies in charge of the river management. Note that this type of information and hydrologic data collected at the catchment scale is an essential part of the **Phase 1 (general setting-up)**, and this knowledge is then used for all the reaches of a given catchment.

Also note that this indicator can be estimated starting from the data required to assess the alterations of the hydrological regime by specific indices (e.g. *IAHRIS*, *IARI*, *QM-HIDRI*, etc.).



To evaluate the indicator *A1*, **three broad classes of discharge** are considered: (1) channel-forming discharges (return interval from 1.5 to 10 years); (2) discharges with a return interval > 10 years; (3) flows below channel-forming discharges.

**1. Channel-forming discharges (return interval *RI* from 1.5 to 10 years).** These are intended as the discharges having the most relevant effects on channel morphology. A value of  $Q_{1.5}$  is conventionally used here to represent the channel-forming discharge. However, the range of discharges with important effects on channel morphology can be widened to return intervals of the order of 10 years. In fact, in braided or wandering morphologies, there are different values which can affect channel form, with islands being modelled by discharges with a return interval up to 10 years. Furthermore, in the case of steep and armoured mountain streams, only discharges with return intervals > 2÷3 years are in general able to determine relevant processes of sediment transport (except in the cases of natural high bedload supply), and the morphological channel configuration is determined by even higher discharges.

**2. Discharges with return interval (*RI*) >10 years.** These also have relevant morphological and hydraulic effects, although their effect on channel morphology is lower than the channel-forming discharge, because of their lower frequency. There are interventions which only have an effect on discharges with a high return interval, as they are designed to start working only above a given threshold (e.g. spillways, retention basins, some dams).

**3. Flows below channel-forming discharge (return interval *RI* < 1.5 years).** This class includes the range of discharge which varies from low-flow conditions to small or moderate flow events below channel-forming flows. Low flows below threshold conditions of erosion and sediment transport are considered to have negligible effects on channel morphology. A notable exception, which is accounted for by indicator *A1*, is represented by **water regulation by dams**, i.e. the release of a relatively constant discharge, **higher than natural flow**. This case is particularly applicable to rivers characterized by a typical Mediterranean hydrological regime (i.e. high flow variability and low-water level during the summer). For such cases, some authors observed that the increase of low-flow discharge from dams and reservoirs may have a geomorphological impact on channel geometry and dynamics (Johnson, 1994; Magdaleno and Fernandez, 2013; Garofano Gomez et al., 2013; Petts and Gurnell, 2013). In fact, the increase of the water level during the summer in rivers which are normally dry or with very low flows, can induce a rise in the water table and promote vegetation encroachment across the channel, promoting channel narrowing.

Data needed for estimating the discharges with given return intervals, and information to evaluate the effects of interventions on such discharges, are often not available. Therefore, **two procedures** can be considered, according to their availability, as follows.

### **1. Data available**

A more rigorous and quantitative procedure is only applied, where data is available, to the evaluation of alterations on channel-forming discharges and/or higher. Possible alterations of flows below channel-forming discharge, restricted to the specific case of prolonged release of increased flows downstream from a dam, are evaluated only qualitatively.

First, it is necessary to evaluate if and how much any intervention existing upstream in the catchment produces alterations on the channel-forming discharges and/or discharges with return interval >10 years.

**1. Channel-forming discharges.** Estimation of  $Q_{1.5}$  *ante* or *post operam* (or of other  $Q$  with  $RI$  between 1.5 and 10 years) can be obtained by a statistical analysis of a sufficiently long series of maximum annual peak discharges, from the closest gauging station to the reach, or on the basis of rainfall – runoff models or models of regionalization of discharges (these estimations are often available at the public agencies responsible for the river management). Normally, this analysis is performed only on the  $Q_{1.5}$ , but in some cases (e.g. braided rivers or mountain streams) further analysis on discharges with  $RI = 10$  years may be necessary. When there are significant changes ( $> 10\%$ ) in these discharges due to artificial interventions, the reach is assigned to class C.

*Example.*  $Q_{1.5} = 300 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$  and a reservoir existing upstream has the effect of reducing this discharge by about  $60 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$ .

**2. Discharges with  $RI > 10$  years.** In the case of upstream interventions affecting this class of discharge and producing significant changes ( $> 10\%$ ), the reach is assigned to class B (even where no changes in the channel-forming discharge occur).

*Example.* Presence of a retention basin upstream designed to work only for discharges with  $RI > 20$  years, and producing a reduction of  $30 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$ , compared to a  $Q_{20}$  estimated to be about  $150 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$ .

**3. Flows below channel-forming discharge.** In the case of prolonged releases of increased flows downstream a dam, specifically during the dry seasons of Mediterranean regime-dominated rivers, producing evident effects on vegetation and channel morphology, the reach is assigned to class B.

Should any of the previous alterations not be occurring, the reach is assigned to class A.

The logical sequence of assessment is summarised in Table 3 and Figure 35.

Table A3. 3 Definition of the classes for the indicator A1.

	$\Delta Q_{1.5-10}$	$\Delta Q (RI > 10 \text{ years})$	Low flows
<b>A</b>	$\leq 10\%$	$\leq 10\%$	No morphological effects
<b>B</b>	$\leq 10\%$	$> 10\%$ and/or increased low flows downstream of dam	
<b>C</b>	$> 10\%$	Any case	Any case

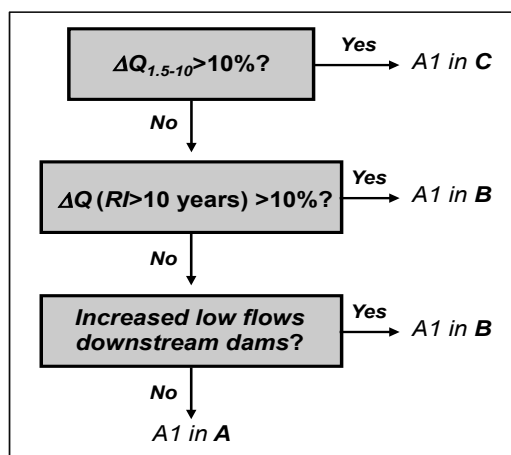


Figure A3. 35 Flow chart of the indicator A1.

## EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type	All types
A	Absence of interventions altering water discharge (dams, spillways, diversions, retention basin, etc.) or interventions however with no significant effects (induced changes $\leq 10\%$ ) on channel-forming discharges (return interval $R/I$ from 1.5 to 10 years) and on discharges with $R/I > 10$ years.
B	Presence of interventions (dams, spillways, diversions, retention basin, etc.) having significant effects (induced changes $> 10\%$ ) on discharges with $R/I > 10$ years, but with no significant effects ( $\leq 10\%$ ) on channel-forming discharges. Or release of increased low flows downstream dams during the dry seasons of Mediterranean regime-dominated rivers, producing evident effects on vegetation and channel morphology.
C	Presence of interventions (dams, spillways, diversions, retention basin, etc.) having significant effects (induced changes $> 10\%$ ) on channel-forming discharges.

## 2. Data not available

In such a case, a **simplified procedure** is adopted that is based on the type of intervention and on available information about its use (e.g. dam for hydropower production or for retention purposes), described as follows. Cases of prolonged releases of increased flows downstream of a dam are evaluated in the same way as for the previous case (data available).

## EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type	All types
A	Absence of interventions altering water discharge, or existence of interventions, but with no effects on channel-forming discharge and on discharges with higher return intervals (e.g. limited water abstraction for irrigation or other uses).
B	Presence of dams (watershed area $> 5\%$ of the reach drainage area) with reduction of peak discharges, or spillways or retention basins functioning only for infrequent discharges ( $R/I > 10$ years). Or release of increased low flows downstream dams during the dry seasons of Mediterranean regime-dominated rivers, producing evident effects on vegetation and channel morphology.
C	Presence of dams (watershed area $> 5\%$ of the reach drainage area) with reduction of peak discharges, or spillways or retention basins functioning for relatively frequent discharges ( $R/I \leq 10$ years), or existence of diversions of medium – large size with water restitution downstream of the reach, or diversions that induce a significant effect on channel-forming discharge.

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE



Figure A3. 36 Alteration of flows. Typical alteration structures.  
(1) Dam; (2) spillway.

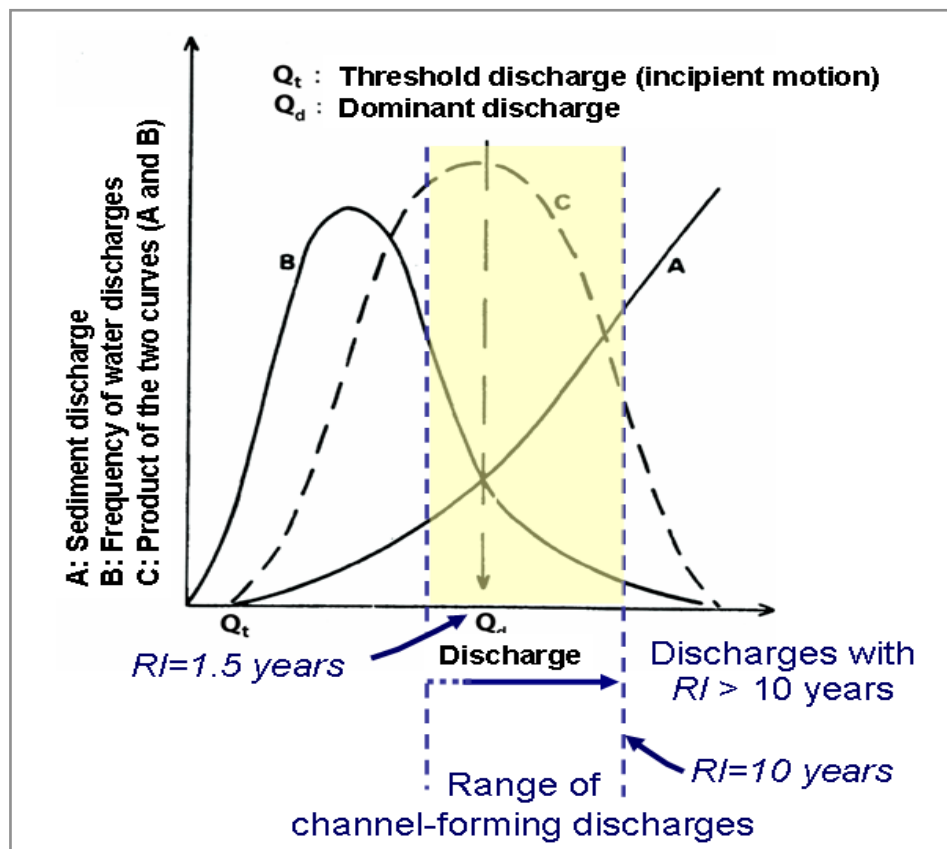


Figure A3. 37 Range of channel-forming discharges.  
(including the discharges with return interval of up to 10 years).  $Q_{1.5}$  (discharge with a return interval of 1.5 years) is the value conventionally assumed as the most representative of channel-forming discharges.

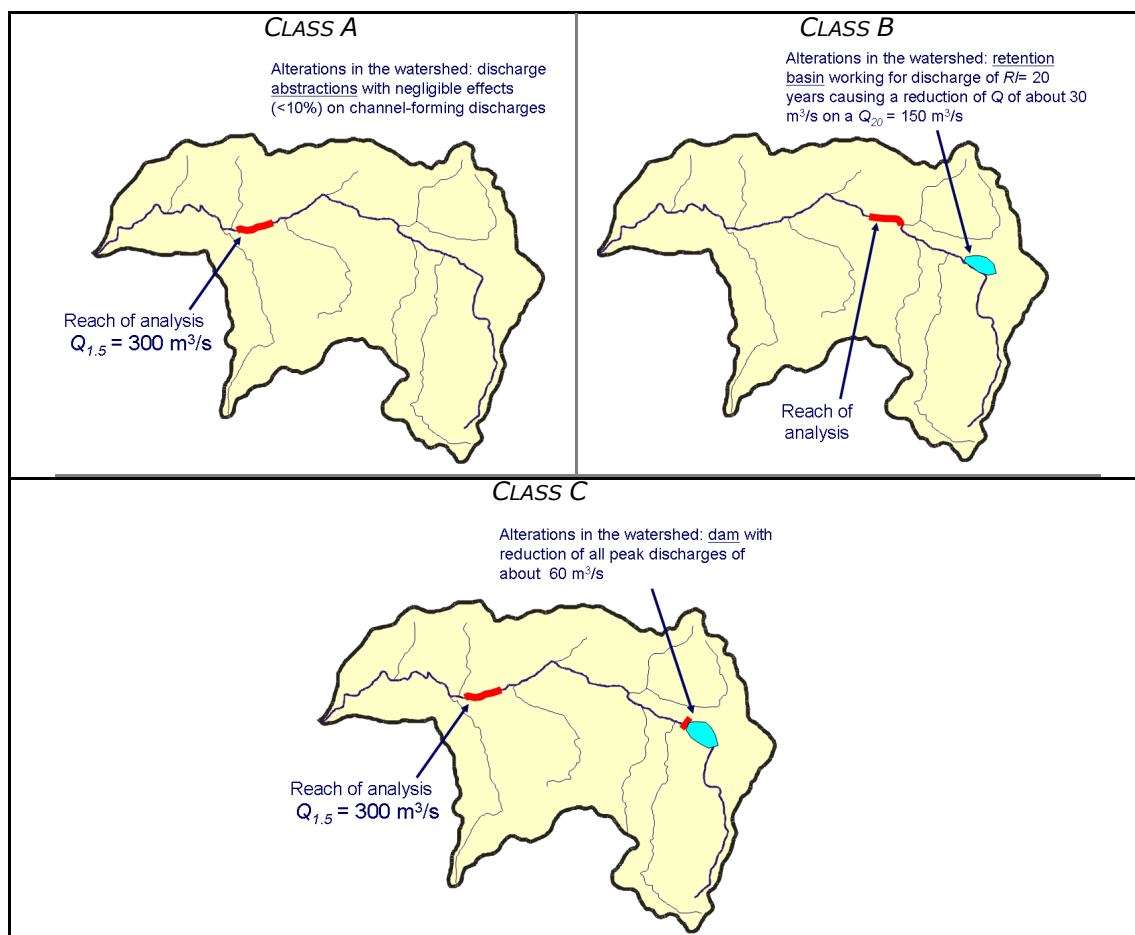


Figure A3. 38 Upstream alteration of flows.

**Class A:** negligible alteration; **Class B:** alteration of high discharges (with  $RI > 10$  years) but not of channel-forming discharges; **Class C:** alteration of channel-forming discharges.

#### A3.4.1.2 $A1_H$ : Upstream alteration of flows without potentially relevant effects on channel morphology

##### DESCRIPTION

This indicator evaluates possible alterations of low flows not having significant effects on channel morphology (i.e., they may cause some change in the extent of geomorphic units, but not in the bankfull channel size).

The indicator considers the alteration of flow occurring upstream of the reach. In facts, generally, significant water withdrawals are put in place by means of hydraulic structures, which alter the continuity of water and sediment and are therefore considered as breaking points for the segmentation into reaches. In the case of water withdrawal with minor structures/management practices inside the reach, which are not considered as a relevant discontinuity for segmentation, their presence is anyway accounted for by this indicator, as described below.

As for the previous indicator, **two procedures** can be considered, as follows.

## 1. Data available

The alterations of the overall hydrological regime are generally assessed by specific indices (e.g. *IAHRIS*, *IARI*, *QM-HIDRI*, etc.), which generally provide a measure of the deviation between the observed hydrological regime and the natural regime in the absence of human intervention. For example, the index *IARI* is obtained, depending on available river discharge data quality and consistency, by comparing the daily and/or monthly discharges actually flowing through the cross section and the corresponding natural discharges. When a sufficiently long time series of flow data is available, the use of a specific index (such as the *IARI*) is strongly advised, and the integration of morphological and hydrological aspects allows for a complete definition and classification of stream hydromorphology. Where hydropeaking is present (e.g. water storage hydropower plants), if hourly discharges are available, the alteration by hydropeaking can be assessed by using procedures such as that proposed by Carolli et al. (2015).

## 2. Data not available

In most cases, sufficient data to apply specific indices of hydrological regime alteration are not available. However, for an overall hydromorphological assessment, a series of interventions and management practices have obvious and relevant effects on flow conditions. Similarly to the previous sub-index  $A1_M$ , a **simplified procedure** is adopted, that is based on a criterion of presence/absence of specific types of pressure causing obvious, relevant low flow alterations (e.g. abstraction for hydropower), described as follows.

### EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type		All types
A	Absence of any type of structure altering flow discharges (dams or other abstractions for irrigation, hydropower, drinking water) in the drainage catchment upstream or within the reach	
B	Presence in the drainage catchment upstream (or within the reach) of one or more structures altering flow discharges (dams or other abstractions for irrigation, hydropower, drinking water) that do not meet the criteria for class C	
C	The reach, or a portion of it, is located between an abstraction and a restitution section of a hydropower plant (by-passed or depleted reach) and/or the reach is located immediately downstream of a hydropower reservoir. In presence of a water storage hydropower plant, if data are absent, it is assumed that the reach is significantly altered by hydropeaking.	
<i>Scores (note that C has a higher weight compared to PC-U because of the lower number of indicators used for C streams for the calculation of the HMQI)</i>		
	<i>C</i>	<i>PC-U</i>
<i>A</i>	<i>0</i>	<i>0</i>
<i>B</i>	<i>8</i>	<i>11</i>
<i>C</i>	<i>16</i>	<i>22</i>

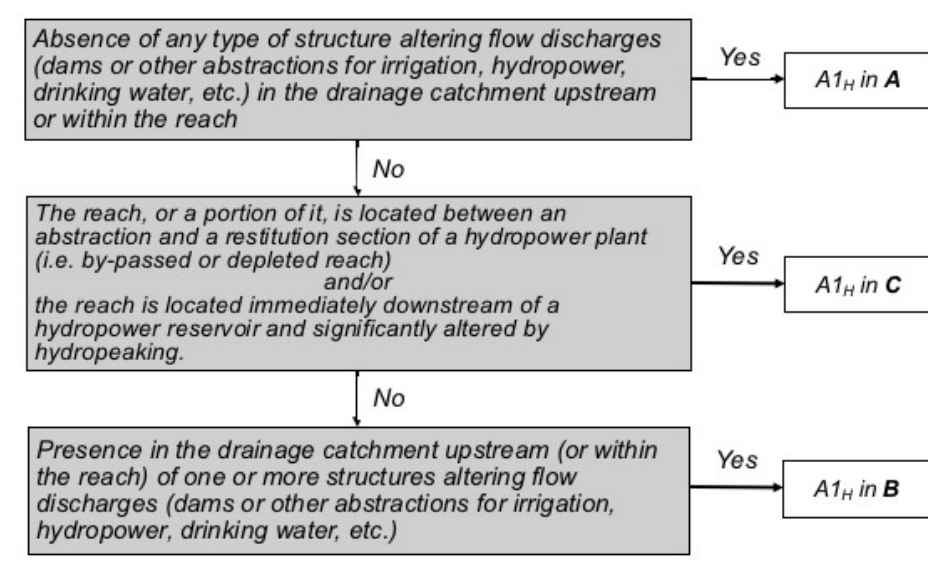


Table A3. 4 Flow chart for indicator A1H.

### A3.4.2 A2: Upstream alteration of sediment discharges

#### DESCRIPTION

An indirect evaluation of the alterations in sediment transport is obtained based on the existence in the catchment of blocking structures that intercept bedload (dams, check dams, weirs), accounting for their drainage area in relation to the reach drainage area. The indicator does not consider hillslope interventions (e.g. reforestation, landslide stabilisation, etc.). Major blocking structures, such as dams, are evaluated here only for their effect on sediment trapping (impacts on flow regime are considered in A1). Interception of the bedload and river fragmentation may have significant effects on the reach's morphological dynamics. This may cause a reduction of depositional features (e.g. bars), inducing erosion processes and eventually promoting unstable conditions.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal:</i> Upstream river network	<i>Lateral:</i> Channel
<b>Measurements:</b> Map layer of interventions, remote sensing	

The degree of alteration in sediment discharges is evaluated as a function of two aspects: (1) the type of structure and its impact on bedload (i.e. full interception or partial interception, depending on sediment filling); (2) the ratio between the drainage area upstream of the structures and the drainage area of the watershed at the section of the reach closure.

Concerning the **type of structures**, the following three cases are considered:

**(T1) Dams.** They create a complete and permanent (in a future perspective) interception and trapping of bedload (except in the cases of measurements of sediment release downstream, which are accounted for).

**(T2) Structures with total interception of bedload.** These determine (or determined) a complete interception (e.g. check dams of a significant size not filled by sediment), but their



impact is considered to be lower than dams, because of their temporary effect (until they are filled).

In *mountain areas*, category *T2* generally includes **check dams with total sediment retention** (retention check dams: usually of large dimensions). Usually these structures are characterized by a small reservoir immediately upstream. Included in this category are also **abstraction weirs of relevant size** (in the order of several meters), which are **not currently filled with sediment**, and which have the effect of a temporary complete interception (until filling) of bedload.

In *hilly – lowland areas*, category *T2* generally includes **consolidation check dams or abstraction weirs of relevant size** (in the order of several meters), which are **not filled**, and which have the effect of temporary complete interception (until filling) of bedload.

**(T3) Structures with partial or no interception of bedload.** These are smaller sized structures, often with the purpose of bed stabilization rather than sediment retention, or also bigger structures (check dams) with the purpose of sediment retention but now completely filled by sediment.

In *mountain areas*, structures of the category *T3* can be generally identified with **filled retention check dams, open check dams, and consolidation check dams**. The latter are considered only when they form a long **sequence**, determining the stabilization of the longitudinal bed profile. The drainage area relates to the check dam furthest downstream. Therefore, isolated consolidation check dams that are unable to significantly reduce the upstream sediment supply are not considered.

In *hilly – lowland areas*, category *T3* generally includes **consolidation check dams or abstraction weirs**, but of a **smaller size**, or of a larger size but **filled** with sediment.

The indicator does not intend to evaluate alteration in the exact amount of the sediment discharge entering into a reach, but rather to assess whether a significant change of the potential sediment supply from the upstream area may have occurred. Concerning the **drainage area** upstream of the structures as opposed to that upstream of the reach, the following classes are considered:

(I)  **$A_s \leq 5\% A_r$** , that is the area upstream the from structures ( $A_s$ ) is smaller than 5% of the area upstream of the reach ( $A_r$ ) (e.g. a dam upstream with a drainage area of 40 km<sup>2</sup> compared to a drainage area of the reach of 500 km<sup>2</sup>);

(II)  **$5\% A_r < A_s \leq 33\% A_r$** , that is the area upstream from the structures ( $A_s$ ) is between 5% and 33% of the area upstream the reach ( $A_r$ ) (e.g. a dam upstream with a drainage area of 40 km<sup>2</sup> compared to the reach's drainage area of 400 km<sup>2</sup>);

(III)  **$33\% A_r < A_s \leq 66\% A_r$** , that is the area upstream from the structures ( $A_s$ ) is between 33% and 66% of the area upstream of the reach ( $A_r$ ) (e.g. a dam upstream with a drainage area of 120 km<sup>2</sup> compared to the reach's drainage area of 200 km<sup>2</sup>);

(IV)  **$A_s > 66\% A_r$** , that is the area upstream from the structures ( $A_s$ ) is  $> 66\%$  of the area upstream from the reach ( $A_r$ ) (e.g. a dam upstream with a drainage area of 150 km<sup>2</sup> compared to the reach's drainage area of 200 km<sup>2</sup>);

(V) The structure is located at the **upstream limit of the reach**.

Assignment to the alteration class as a function of typology and drainage areas is reported in Table 4.

Table A3. 5 Definition of classes for indicator A2.

As/Ar Type	5+33%	33+66%	> 66%	Upstream limit
(T1) Dams	B1	B2	C1	C2
(T2) Check dams with total sediment retention or abstraction weirs (large) with complete interception	A	B1	B2	B2
(T3) Filled or open check dams or sequence of consolidation check dams or abstraction weirs with partial or no interception (or small in size)	A	A	B1	B1

### Measures of sediment release or removal

In the case of **measures of sediment release downstream from a dam** (or other structure), the score is reduced according to the following rules (in any physiographic context):

- (1) Measures allowing for the flux of *all bedload downstream* (complete by-pass): two classes lower are assigned (e.g. from C2 to B2, or from B1 to A).
- (2) Measures allowing for a *high but not total bedload flux downstream*: a class lower is assigned (e.g. from C2 to C1).

Vice versa, if the maintenance agency in charge of a structure carries out a periodic **sediment removal upstream from a check dam** (that is not released downstream) in order to prevent it from filling completely, the structure is considered as causing a complete interception of bedload (T2).

To determine the final class for this indicator, the following rules need to be considered:

1. The indicator is not applied for the most upstream reach of a river, unless relevant structures of sediment interception (e.g. sequences of check dams) are located further upstream.
2. In the case of more than one structure in the upstream catchment, the structure with the highest score is considered.
3. In the case of a natural barrage and its resulting lake (e.g. landslide dams, etc.), upstream artificial interception structures are not considered in the evaluation of reaches downstream from the lake.

Identification of existing structures can be carried out using the map layer of interventions (when available) and remote sensing. Note that this type of information concerning existing crossing structures at the catchment scale is an essential part of **Phase 1 (general setting)**. Information on the degree of structure filling, should it be necessary to discriminate between two classes, can also be acquired from a map layer of interventions, from management agencies, or directly from field surveys. In general, it is recommended to proceed by moving progressively upstream, and starting from the structures with the highest score, in order to acquire the information strictly necessary for the determination of the final score. The logical scheme is illustrated in Figure 39.

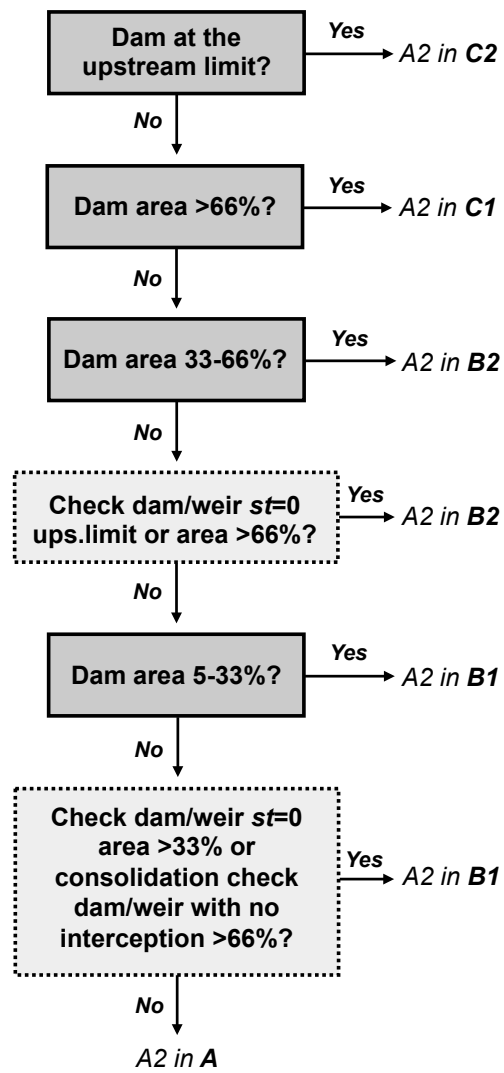


Table A3. 6 Flow chart of the indicator A2.  
(*st* = sediment transport).

## EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type	All types
<b>A</b>	Absence of structures that can alter the normal flux of sediment along the hydrographic network, or presence of weirs and/or dams but with no significant effects. Dams (T1) are considered as not significant when $As \leq 5\% Ar$ , i.e. the area upstream from the structures ( $As$ ) is lower than 5% of the area upstream from the reach ( $Ar$ ). Interception structures (T2) are considered as not significant when $As \leq 33\% Ar$ . Structures with partial or no interception of bedload are considered as not significant when $As \leq 66\% Ar$ .
<b>B1</b>	Presence of a dam (T1) for $5\% Ar < As \leq 33\% Ar$ . One or more structures with total bedload interception (T2) for $33\% Ar < As \leq 66\% Ar$ , or one or more structures with partial or no interception of bedload (T3) for $As > 66\% Ar$ .
<b>B2</b>	Presence of a dam (T1) for $33\% Ar < As \leq 66\% Ar$ . One or more structures with total bedload interception (T2) for $As > 66\% Ar$ or at the upstream reach limit.
<b>C1</b>	Presence of a dam (T1) for $As > 66\% Ar$ .
<b>C2</b>	Presence of a dam (T1) at the upstream reach limit.
<b>Measures of sediment release downstream:</b> in case of measures allowing for the flux of all bedload downstream (complete by-pass), the structure is assigned to two classes lower. In case of measures allowing for a high but not total bedload flux downstream, the structure is assigned to one class lower.	

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

### 3.1.1.1 Structures in mountain areas

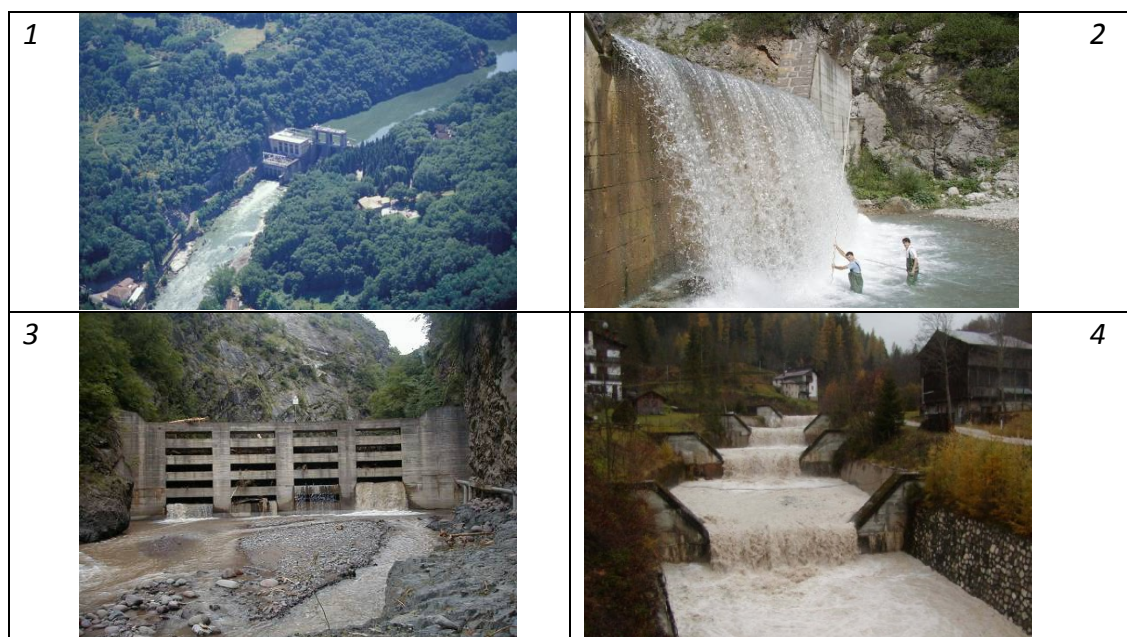
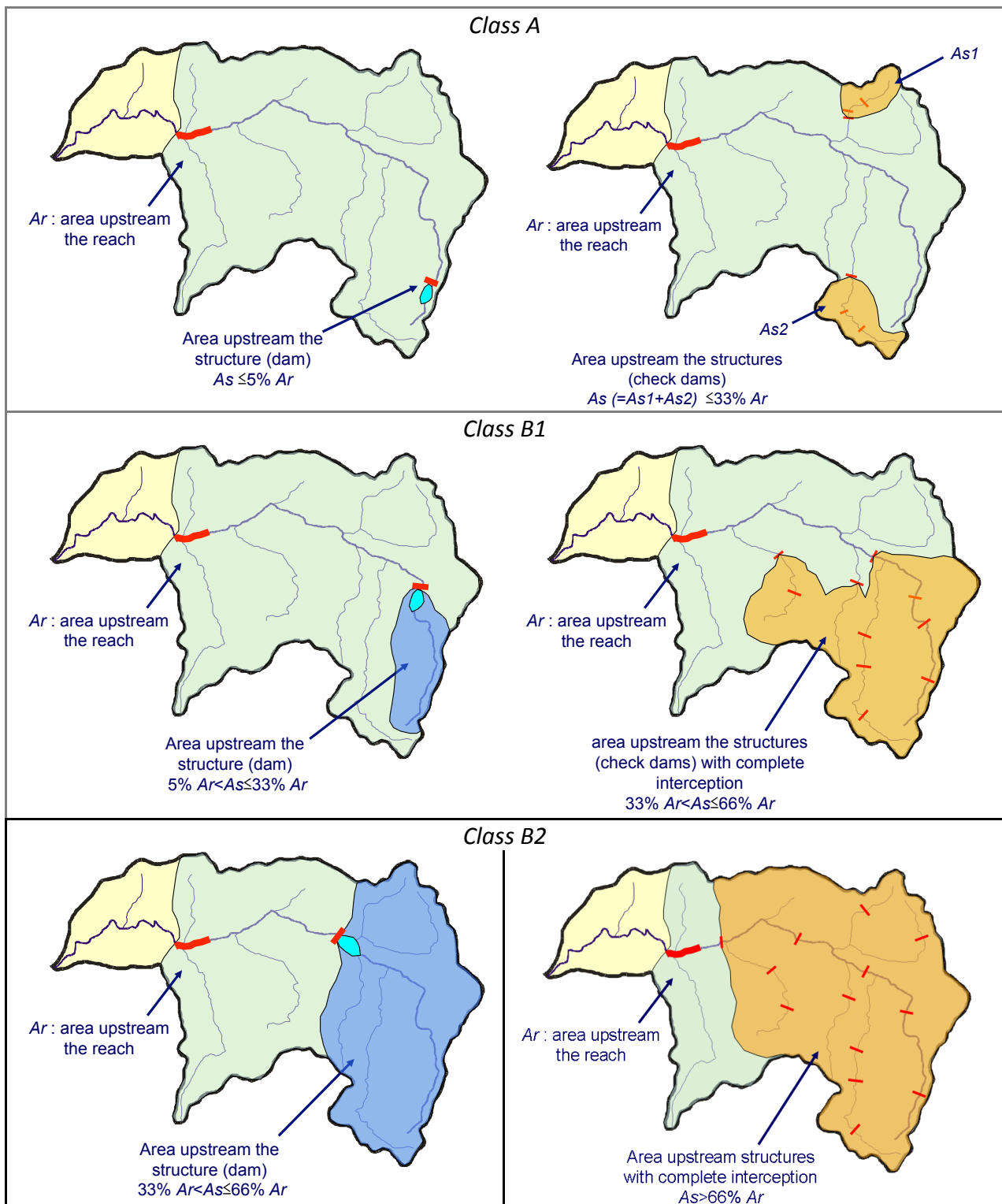


Figure A3. 39 Transversal structures of alteration of sediment discharges in mountain areas.  
(1) Dam; (2) retention check dam; (3) open check dam; (4) sequence of stepped consolidation check dams.

Structures in hilly – lowland areas



Figure A3. 40 Transversal structures of alteration of sediment discharges in hilly and lowland areas.  
(1) Consolidation check dam; (2) abstraction weir; (3) not filled abstraction weir; (4) filled abstraction weir.



**Figure A3. 41 Upstream alteration of sediment discharges (1).**

**Class A:** dam (T1) with a negligible drainage area ( $\leq 5\%$  of the area upstream from the reach,  $A_r$ ) (left); the total area of portions of the watershed with check dams (T2) is  $\leq 33\%$  of the area upstream from the reach (right).

**Class B1:** dam (T1) with a drainage area between  $5\%$  and  $33\%$  of the area upstream from the reach (left); the total area of portions of the watershed with check dams with complete interception (T2) is between  $33\%$  and  $66\%$  of the area upstream from the reach (right).

**Class B2:** dam (T1) with a drainage area between  $33\%$  and  $66\%$  of the area upstream from the reach (left); the total area of portions of the watershed with check dams with complete interception (T2) is  $> 66\%$  of the area upstream from the reach.

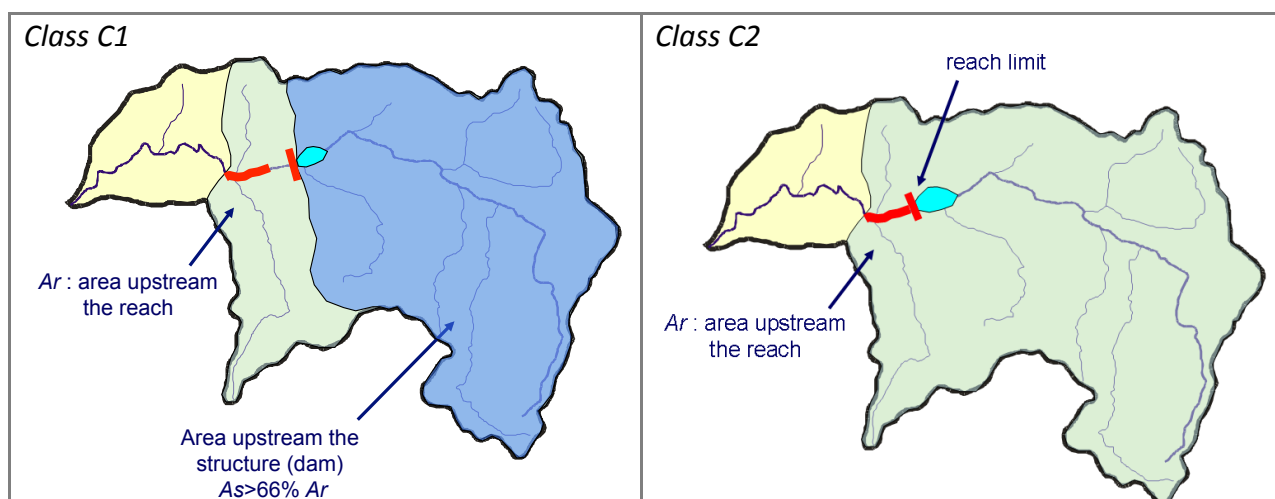


Figure A3.39 Upstream alteration of sediment discharges (2).  
**Class C1:** dam (T1) with a drainage area > 66% of the area upstream from the reach (left).  
**Class C2:** dam (T1) at the upstream limit of the reach (right).

### Alteration of longitudinal continuity in the reach

#### A3.4.3 A3: Alteration of flows in the reach

##### DESCRIPTION

This is evaluated in the same way as A1, but in this case it refers to interventions along the reach. Interventions include spillways, flow diversions or water abstractions, and retention basins. Dams are excluded because they are necessarily identified with the limit of reach, therefore their effects in terms of alteration of discharge are necessarily evaluated in the reach downstream. Alteration of flows below channel forming discharge caused by dams are therefore not considered in this indicator. Note that other structures too, which have a strong discontinuity impact on water discharge should be defined as the limits between two reaches (see Step 4: other discontinuities during the segmentation), therefore A3 is rarely applied to this type of structure.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal:</i> Reach	<i>Lateral:</i> Entire floodplain (including recent terraces)
<b>Measurements:</b> Map layer of interventions, remote sensing	

Identification of existing structures can be carried out by remote sensing, whereas the information required to assign a reach to a class should be obtained by a map layer of interventions, or directly by the agencies in charge of the structure's management, indicating location, type and operational methods. All the considerations made for A1 are applied to this indicator, including the two procedures (data available or not available), as follows.



## 1. Data available

### EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type	All types
A	Absence of interventions altering water discharges (spillways, diversions, retention basin, etc.) or interventions but with no significant effects (induced changes $\leq 10\%$ ) on channel-forming discharges (return interval $R/I$ from 1.5 to 10 years) and on discharges with $R/I > 10$ years. This latter case is accounted for in $A1_H$ .
B	Presence of interventions (spillways, diversions, retention basin, etc.) having significant effects (induced changes $> 10\%$ ) on discharges with $R/I > 10$ years, but with no significant effects ( $\leq 10\%$ ) on channel-forming discharges.
C	Presence of interventions (spillways, diversions, retention basin, etc.) having significant effects (induced changes $> 10\%$ ) on channel-forming discharge.

## 2. Data not available

### EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type	All types
A	Absence of interventions altering water discharges or existence of interventions, but with no effects on channel-forming discharges and discharges with higher return intervals (e.g. limited water abstraction for irrigation or other uses).
B	Presence of spillways, diversions or retention basins functioning only for infrequent discharges ( $R/I > 10$ years).
C	Presence of spillways, diversions or retention basins functioning also for relatively frequent discharges ( $R/I \leq 10$ years), or existence of diversions of medium – big size with water restitution downstream the reach, or diversions such to induce a significant effect on channel-forming discharge.

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

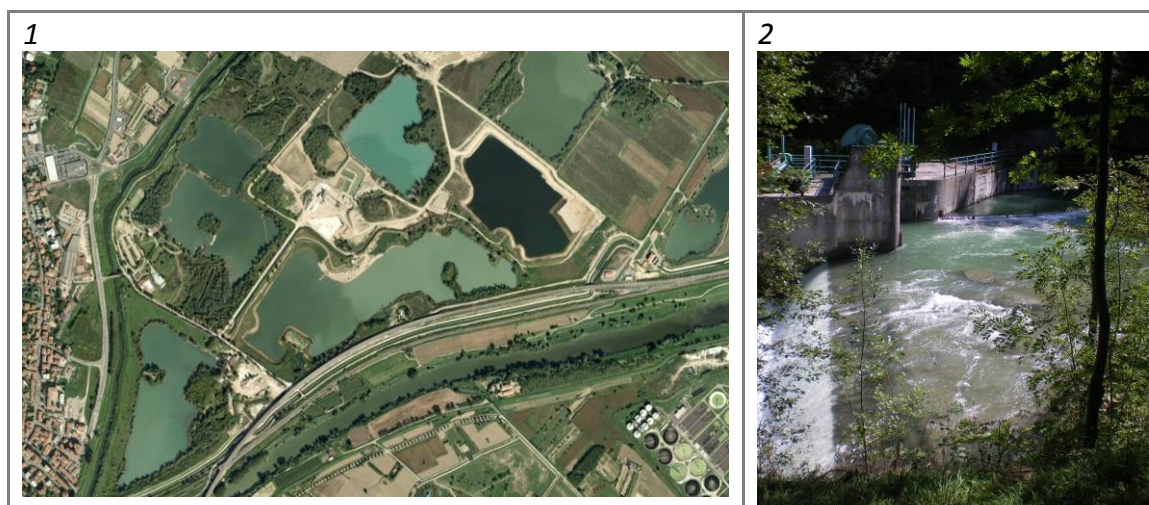


Figure A3. 42 Other structures that can cause an alteration of flows within a reach.  
(Besides those defined for A1)  
(1) Retention basins; (2) discharge abstraction.

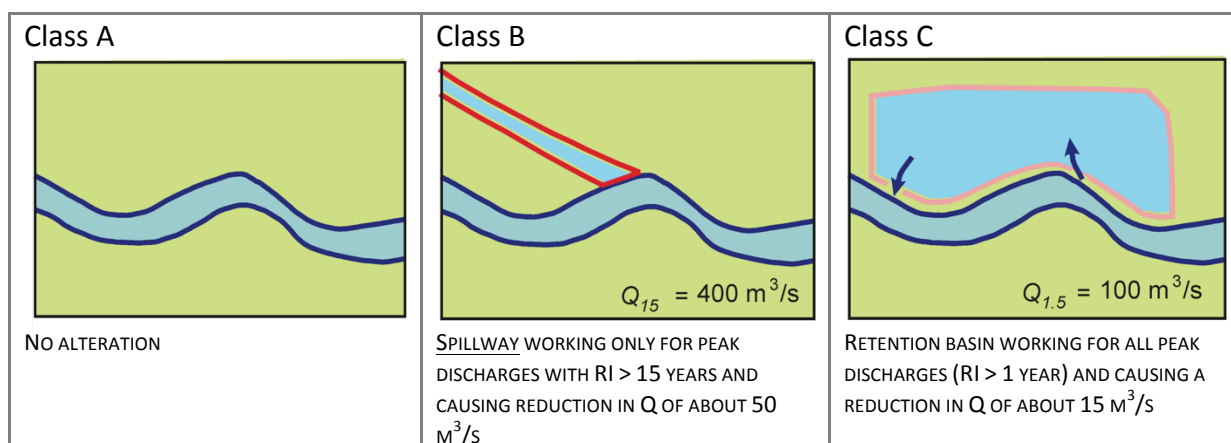


Figure A3. 43 Alteration of flows in the reach.

Class A: absence of alteration. Class B: alteration of discharges with RI > 10 years. Class C: alteration of channel-forming discharges.

#### A3.4.4 A4: Alteration of sediment discharge in the reach

##### DESCRIPTION

This indicator is based on the typology and frequency of blocking structures intercepting bedload along the reach (check dams, weirs, diversion structures, etc.) or other structures causing its alteration (e.g. retention basins, dam downstream, bed consolidation) by producing a partial sediment trapping or bedload reduction induced by a decrease in bed slope. The indicator does not refer to hillslope interventions (e.g. reforestation, landslide stabilisation, etc.).

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal:</i> Reach	<i>Lateral:</i> Channel
<b>Measurements:</b> Map layer of interventions, Remote sensing, Field survey	

In the case of a **dam located at the downstream limit of the reach**, as previously explained, its effects in terms of bedload interceptions are considered in the downstream reach (indicators A2 and F1). However, the dam also alters the normal bedload flux for the portion of the reach immediately upstream from the structure by decreasing the flow velocity and inducing sedimentation. If the artificial reservoir created by the dam is of a relevant size, it will not be subject to the assessment procedure (because the stream will have completely changed its original characteristics) (Figure 45). Relevant size is normally intended to be equivalent to the spatial scale of a site (i.e. single-thread channels: length not less than 10 times the channel width; multi-thread, wide channels: minimum length to the order of 500 m). For reservoirs of a smaller size, these are included within the stream reach (Figure 45).

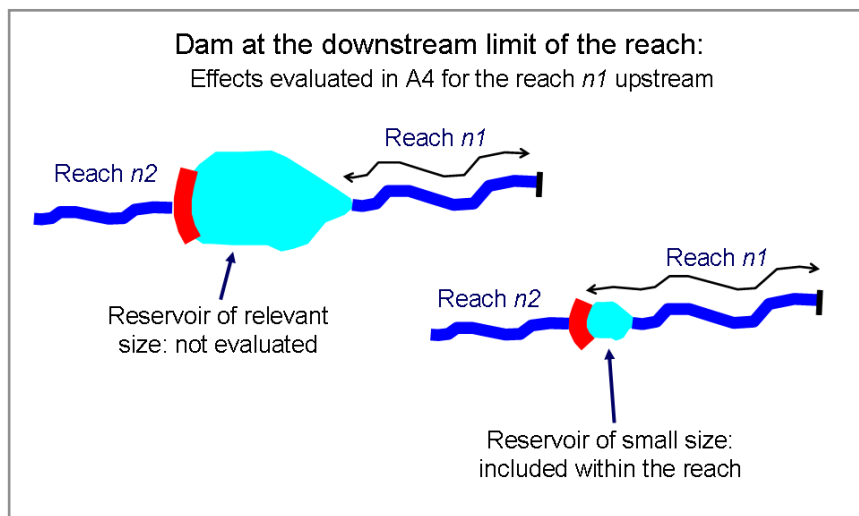


Figure A3. 44 Rule of evaluation of the effects of a dam/reservoir at the downstream limit of the reach.

**Retention check dams** are high structures (up to 10 m) aiming to trap sediment and wood, commonly occurring in mountain areas. Check dams intercept all the material until they are completely filled. In this case, and in the absence of sediment removal, an equilibrium bed profile with a decreased bed slope tends to be reached, inducing coarse sediment deposition. Note that a check dam is usually associated with the boundary between two reaches, except in the case of a sequence of close check dams which may be included in the same reach to avoid excessive river segmentation. In recent decades, **open check dams** have been increasingly used, allowing the transport downstream of bedload of smaller grain size.

For the large structures described so far, definition of classes is simply based on the **presence/absence** of one (or more) of these structures along a reach, and not on their number or frequency (i.e. the presence of one structure along a reach of any length is sufficient for the assignation of the reach to a given class).

**Consolidation check dams** are not designed to intercept sediment and wood, but to decrease the intensity of the bedload transport and the effect of erosion through a reduction in bed slope. In this case, several structures are positioned along a given reach. The effect of these structures on channel morphology depends on the combination of their distance and height (i.e. the difference in elevation between structures) compared to the total difference in elevation within the reach. However, the information on structure height is difficult to obtain, therefore the indicator only refers to the **density** of structures along a reach (i.e. number per reach km), but differentiates the degree of alteration depending on bed slope. A transverse structure in a steep channel generally produces a smaller upstream effect compared to a channel with a relatively low slope, where the effect may occur for long distances upstream (hundreds of meters).

Finally, **instream retention basins** and **abstraction weirs**, which can partially intercept the sediment transport, are also considered in this indicator (note that in the case of channels with bed slope  $S > 1\%$ , retention basins are considered as open check dams, whereas in channels with bed slope  $S \leq 1\%$  they are counted together with consolidation check dams and weirs).

All the structures can easily be identified by remote sensing, except in the case of small and confined channels (where very high resolution aerial photos are not available). In these cases, a map layer of interventions and/or field survey are required.

#### EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type	All types
<b>A</b>	Absence of any type of structures altering sediment discharges: there are no structures in the reach aimed to intercept sediment and wood (check dams, abstraction weirs, etc.) or which cause an alteration of sediment discharges (retention basins, dam downstream) although not designed for this purpose.
<b>B</b>	<p><i>Steep channels (bed slope <math>S &gt; 1\%</math>):</i> consolidation check dams/weirs with relatively low density (<math>\leq 1</math> every 200 m on average in the reach) and/or one or more open check dams (including instream retention basins).</p> <p><i>Channels with bed slope <math>S \leq 1\%</math>:</i> consolidation check dam and/or abstraction weirs (including instream retention basins) with relatively low density (<math>\leq 1</math> every 1000 m on average in the reach).</p> <p>In the case of presence of anabranches, the length of the reach is the sum of the lengths of the anabranches.</p>
<b>C</b>	<p><i>Steep channels (<math>S &gt; 1\%</math>):</i> consolidation check dams/weirs with high density (<math>&gt; 1</math> every 200 m on average in the reach) and/or one or more retention check dams.</p> <p><i>Channels with <math>S \leq 1\%</math>:</i> consolidation check dams and/or abstraction weirs (including instream retention basins) with high density (<math>&gt; 1</math> every 1000 m on average in the reach)</p> <p>Or presence of a dam and/or artificial reservoir at the downstream reach limit (<i>any physiographic context</i>).</p>
<p><i>Additional scores</i></p> <p>Where transversal structures, including bed sills and ramps (see A9) are <math>&gt; 1</math> every 150 m in steep channels (<math>S &gt; 1\%</math>), or <math>&gt; 1</math> every 750 m in channels with <math>S \leq 1\%</math>, <u>add 6</u>.</p> <p>Where transversal structures, including bed sills and ramps (see A9) are <math>&gt; 1</math> every 100 m in steep channels (<math>S &gt; 1\%</math>), or <math>&gt; 1</math> every 500 m in channels with <math>S \leq 1\%</math>, <u>add 12</u>.</p>	

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

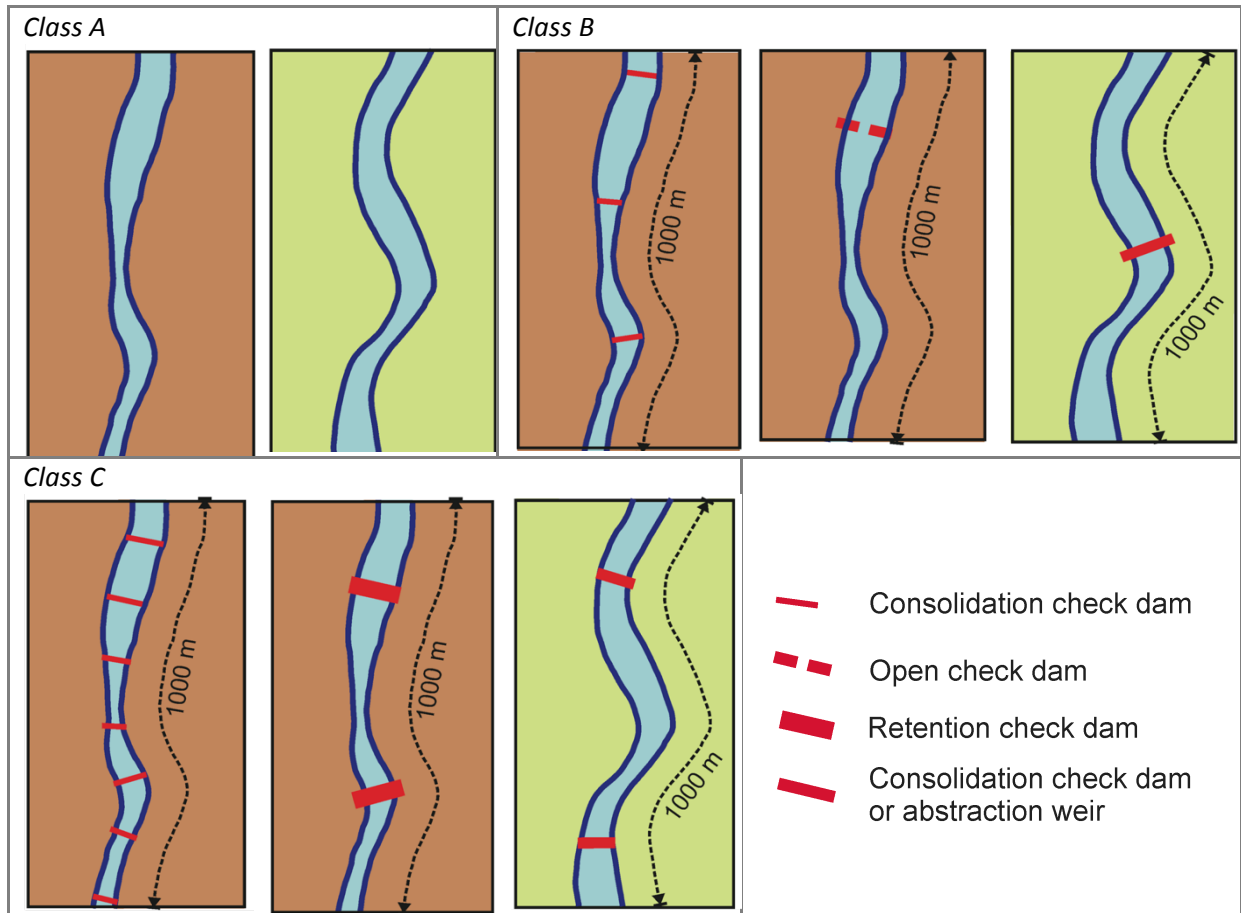


Figure A3. 45 Alteration of sediment transport.

**Class A:** absence of alteration. **Class B** in steep channels (bed slope  $S > 1\%$ ): consolidation check dams in limited number ( $\leq 1$  every 200 m); or one or more open check dams. **Class B** in channels with bed slope  $S \leq 1\%$ : consolidation check dams or abstraction weirs in limited number ( $\leq 1$  every 1000 m). **Class C** in steep channels (bed slope  $S > 1\%$ ): frequent consolidation check dams ( $> 1$  every 200 m) or one or more retention check dams. **Class C** in channels with bed slope  $S \leq 1\%$ : frequent consolidation check dams and/or abstraction weirs ( $> 1$  every 1000 m).



Figure A3. 46 Cases with very high density of transversal structures: An additional score of 6 or 12 (depending on the density) is applied.

### A3.4.5 A5: Crossing structures

#### DESCRIPTION

This accounts for the presence and frequency of crossing structures, including bridges, fords, and culverts, which may reduce or intercept sediment and wood transport. Only **bridges** which interfere with the fluvial corridor are considered, i.e. those bridges with some artificial element (piers or abutments) in the channel or adjacent plain, or which potentially interfere with water fluxes although only during exceptional flood events. Bridges that are completely unrelated to the fluvial corridor are not counted (e.g. a viaduct crossing a valley markedly higher than the channel and with piers and/or abutments standing directly on hillslopes). Regarding **fords**, only those with fixed crossing structures are accounted for here (i.e. dirt roads are not considered), because of their partial influence on bedload (coarse sediment). Finally, the cases where streams cross urban areas underground are considered as **culverts**. They have effects on channel cross-sections and lateral continuity similar to a crossing structure, while the additional alterations associated to a culvert (fixed banks, bed revetments) are evaluated separately through the indicators A6 and A9.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Reach	<i>Lateral</i> : Channel
<b>Measurements</b> : Remote sensing, topographic maps, field survey	

All these structures can easily be identified by remote sensing, except for culverts, which may require more detailed analysis using topographic maps and/or field checks. As for other indicators of artificial elements, this indicator evaluates the **number of crossing structures** along a reach rather than their effect.

#### EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type	All types
<b>A</b>	Absence of crossing structures (bridges, fords, culverts).
<b>B</b>	Presence of some crossing structures ( $\leq 1$ every 1000 m on average in the reach). In the case of presence of anabranches, the reach length is the sum of the lengths of the anabranches.
<b>C</b>	Presence of many crossing structures ( $> 1$ every 1000 m on average in the reach).



## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE



Figure A3. 47 Crossing structures.

(1) Bridge with interference on fluvial dynamics; (2) crossing structure unrelated to the fluvial corridor; (3) ford with culverts; (4) culvert.

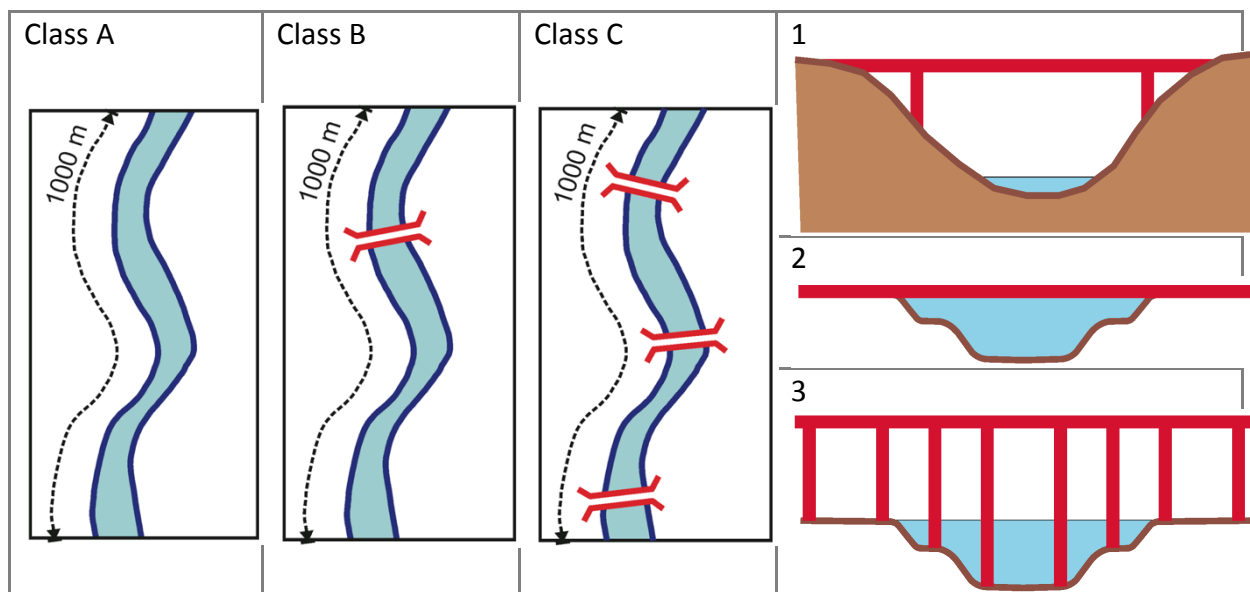


Figure A3. 48 Crossing structures.

Class A: absence of structures. Class B: crossing structures in limited number ( $\leq 1$  every 1000 m). Class C: frequent crossing structures ( $>1$  every 1000 m). On the right: interference of bridges with the fluvial corridor. (1) Bridge completely unrelated (viaduct crossing a valley at relevant height); (2) bridge with no piers but which may interfere with high discharges; (3) bridge very high but with piers interfering with fluvial dynamics processes.



## Alteration of lateral continuity

### A3.4.6 A6: Bank protections

#### DESCRIPTION

Various types of bank protection are considered which alter the supply of sediment and wood from lateral channel mobility, including both hard bank reinforcement (walls, rip-raps gabions, groynes), and soft reinforcement (bioengineering).

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal:</i> Reach	<i>Lateral:</i> Banks
<b>Measurements:</b> Map layer of interventions, remote sensing, field survey	

Only bank protections along the bank lines (which are the limits of the bankfull channel) or in the close surroundings are considered: bank protections built in past periods, which at present far from the channel and therefore having no immediate effects on channel mobility are not assessed (they may be considered in the indicator *F5*, having the effect of limiting the erodible corridor).

Analysis from remote sensing does not always allow the identification of this type of structure, especially when they have been built in the past and are partly covered by riparian vegetation. The integration of remote observations with the map layer of interventions and/or field checks is recommended.

The indicator is based on the **percentage of protected banks** over the total length (sum of both banks), where the latter is defined in a GIS (for simplicity, it may be assumed to correspond to twice the reach length measured along the centreline). Where anabranches are present, the total bank length is the sum of both banks for each anabranch.

A particular case is that of **groynes**, because they are placed perpendicular to the bank. Similarly to the previous rule, only groynes in contact or within the channel are considered (external groynes are considered in the indicator *F5*) and an evaluation of the greater size between the groyne width and the protruding length is obtained (generally from aerial photos, and eventually from field check). In the case of groynes with the outer limit corresponding to the bank edge, their protruding length is equal to zero and therefore they have no effects for this indicator. Note that the indicator only evaluates the presence of groynes in terms of protected bank length, and not in terms of the magnitude of their effects (e.g. distance of influence).

#### EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type	All types
<b>A</b>	Absence or localized presence of bank protections, i.e. for a length $\leq 5\%$ total length of the banks (sum of both banks). In the case of presence of anabranches, the total bank length is the sum of both bank lengths for each anabranch.
<b>B</b>	Presence of protections for $\leq 33\%$ total length of the banks (sum of both banks).
<b>C</b>	Presence of protections for $> 33\%$ total length of the banks (sum of both banks).
<i>Additional scores</i> <i>For a high density of bank protections (&gt;50% of total length of the banks), add 6.</i> <i>For an extremely high density of bank protections (&gt;80% of total length of the banks), add 12.</i>	

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

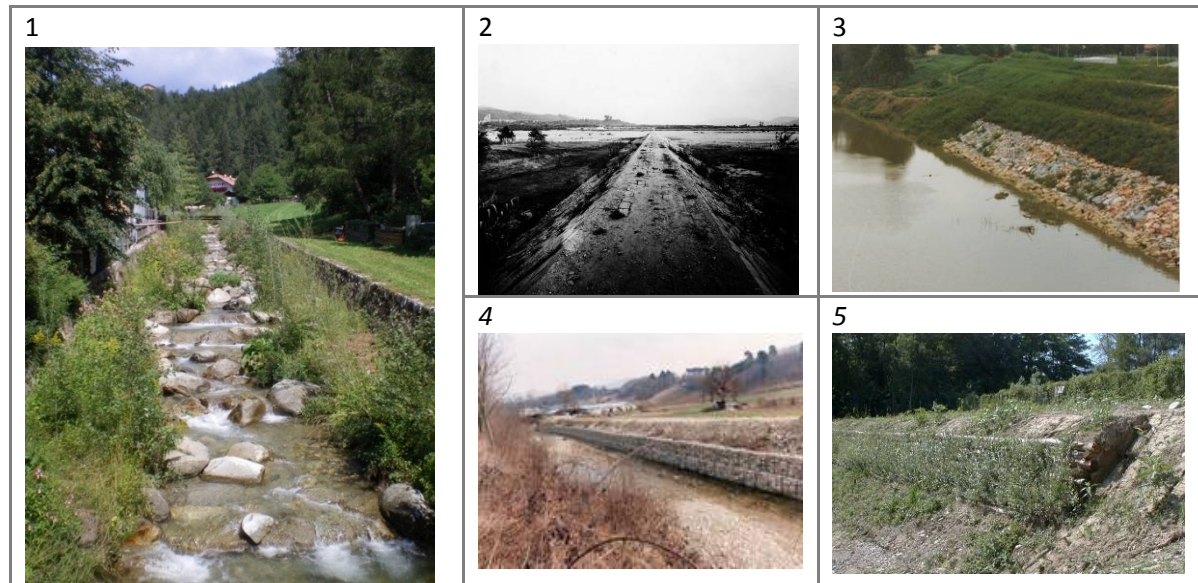


Figure A3. 49 Bank protections types.

(1) Bank walls (2) groyne; (3) rip raps; (4) gabions; (5) bioengineering bank stabilization.

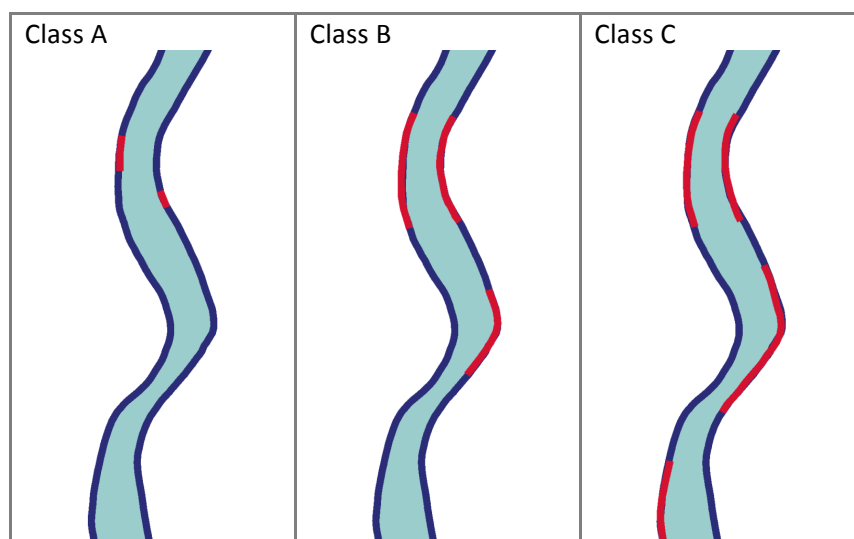


Figure A3. 50 Bank protections: classification.

*Class A*: localized protections (red lines); in the example the structures are 4% of the total length of the two banks. *Class B*: significant presence of bank protections ( $\leq 33\%$ ); in the example they are about 30% of the total length of the two banks. *Class C*: relevant presence of bank protections ( $> 33\%$ ); in the example they occupy about 50% of the total length of the two banks.

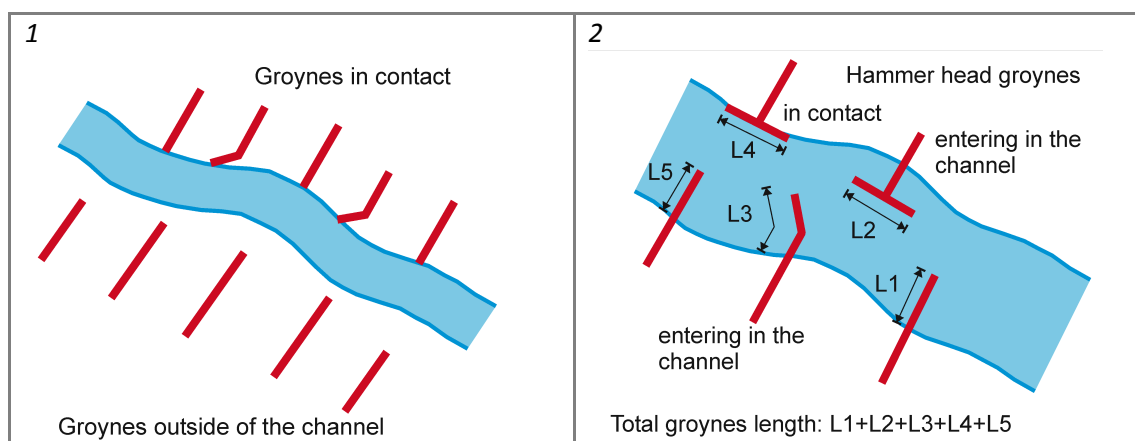


Figure A3. 51 Case of groynes.

(1) Groynes outside of the channel are not considered (instead, they are accounted for in the indicator *F5*); in the case of straight groynes in contact with the channel boundary, the width of the groyne head is usually negligible. (2) In the case of groynes entering in the channel, the greater size between protruding length and head width is considered (the latter is generally the prevailing size in the case of hammer head groynes). Note that hammer head groynes in contact (as opposed to straight or bayonet groynes) are considered.

#### A3.4.7 A7: Artificial levées

##### DESCRIPTION

This indicator accounts for the presence and position of artificial levées (or embankments). They have an effect on the lateral hydrological continuity impeding the natural flooding of areas adjacent to the river. It is based on their longitudinal continuity and distance from the channel. Bank protections or embankments (evaluated in A6) with a height greater than the floodplain level are also evaluated by this indicator, as well as all those artificial infrastructures (e.g. roads) which also functions as a levée. On the other hand, artificial levées which also function as bank protection are also accounted for by the indicator A6.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Reach	<i>Lateral</i> : Entire floodplain (including recent terraces)
<b>Measurements</b> : Remote sensing, topographic maps, field survey, map layer of interventions	

The indicator is applied only to **partly confined and unconfined channels**, because artificial levées are typically present in the floodplain (artificial levées in confined channels are infrequent and have no significant effect on the hydrological lateral continuity).

This indicator is mainly evaluated by remote sensing, supported by topographic maps. In the case of bank protections which function as levées, integrating the evaluation with a field survey and/or by consulting the map layer of interventions is recommended.

Regarding the **length**, the percentage of the artificial levée's length over the total length of the banks is considered (similarly to the previous indicator) though, in this case, the length of banks directly in contact with hillslopes is excluded. Regarding the **distance**, three possible cases are considered: (1) "*set-back levées*": where set back distance > the mean channel width (*W*); (2) "*close*": where distance ≤ *W*; (3) "*bank-edge levées*": when they are immediately in contact with the top of the bank, or at a maximum distance of the same order of magnitude as the bank height. The distance here is considered to account for the

effects of levées on lateral channel mobility and on habitat diversity, rather than in terms of hydraulic risk. Selection of the class is made according to the extended answers and Table 5. Note that the calculation is made separately for the two river sides: e.g. in the case of a left bank with 100% in contact and a right bank with 20% in contact and 80% close, the total in the reach will be 60% in contact and 40% close.

In the case of **two artificial levée systems**, the distance refers to the levées closest to the channel. In the case of **anabranching channels** with multiple artificial levée systems (e.g. one for each individual anabranch), the three cases must be applied to each anabranch and the total bank length is the sum of both banks for all anabranches.

**Table A3. 7 Definition of classes as a function of the length of bank-edge and close levées (in % over the total length of both banks).**

Class	Sum of bank-edge and close [%]	Bank-edge [%]
A	0÷5	0÷5
B	5÷90	0÷50
	90÷100	0÷33
C	50÷90	50÷90
	90÷100	33÷100

#### EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type	Partly confined or unconfined
A	Absent or set-back levées (i.e. distance > <i>W</i> ) for any length, or localized presence of close and bank-edge levées ( $\leq 5\%$ of the total length of the banks). In the case of presence of anabranches, each anabranch must be evaluated and the total bank length is the length of both banks for all anabranches.
B	The sum of close and bank-edge levées is > 5% of the total length of the banks, including the following cases (excluding banks directly in contact with hillslopes): (a) sum of close levées and bank-edge levées $\leq 90\%$ of which bank-edge levées $\leq 50\%$ ; (b) sum of close levées and bank-edge levées > 90% of which bank-edge levées $\leq 33\%$ .
C	The sum of close and bank-edge levées is > 50% of the total length of the banks, including the following cases (excluding banks directly in contact with hillslopes): (a) sum of close levées and bank-edge levées $\leq 90\%$ of which bank-edge levées > 50% and $\leq 90\%$ ; (b) sum of close levées and bank-edge levées > 90% of which bank-edge levées > 33%.
<i>Additional scores</i> <i>In the case of artificial bank-edge levées &gt; 66% add 6.</i> <i>In the case of artificial bank-edge levées along &gt; 80% of total length of the banks) add 12.</i>	

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

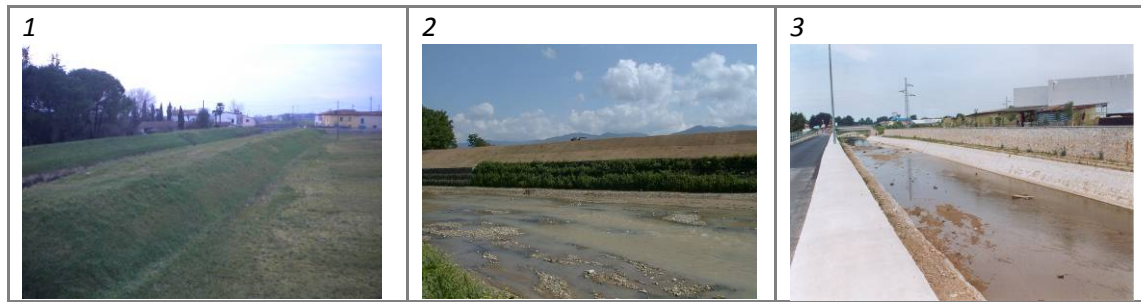


Figure A3. 52 Artificial levées.

(1) Earthen levees; (2) bank-edge levee; (3) bank walls with function of levees. h

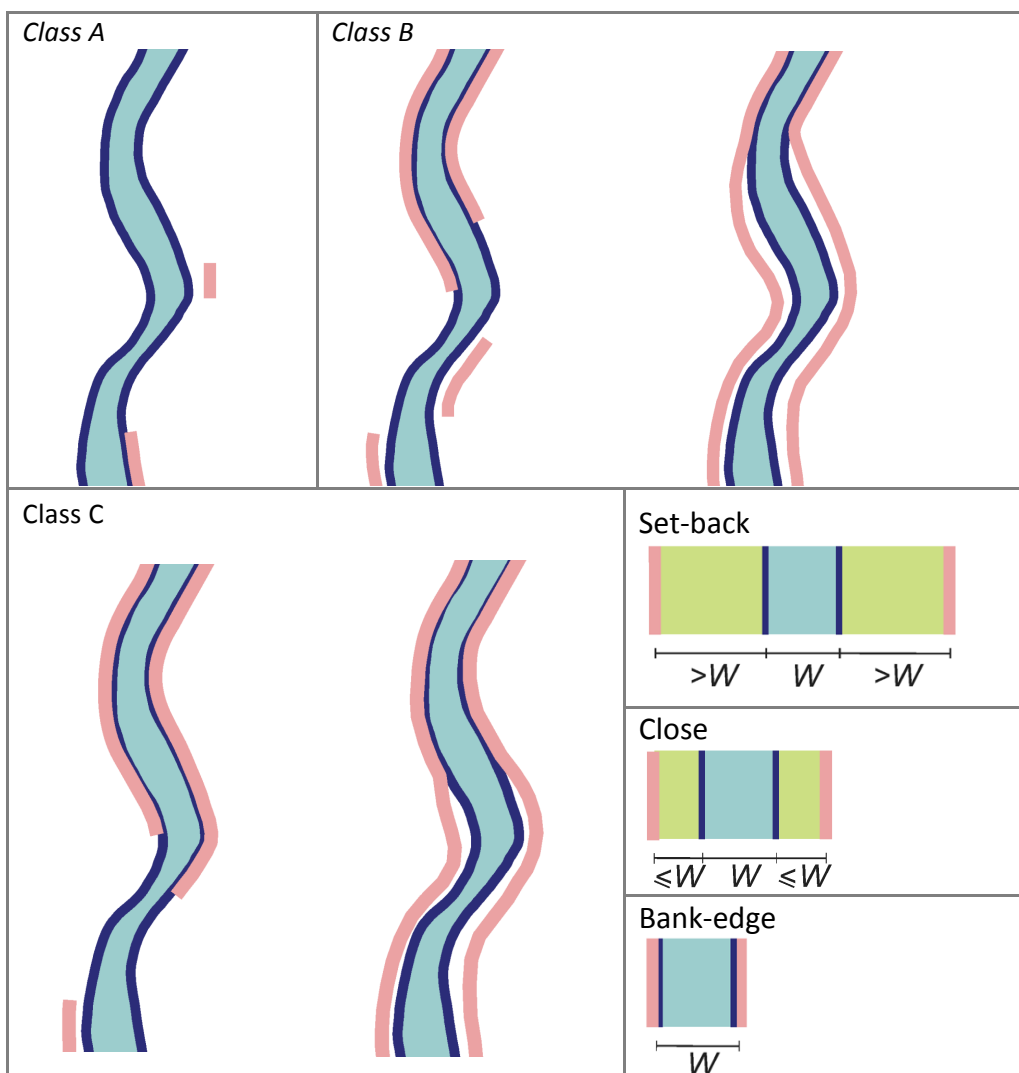


Figure A3. 53 Artificial levees.

Class A: localized bank-edge or close levees ( $\leq 5\%$ ). Class B: the total sum of bank-edge and close levees is  $\leq 90\%$ , with bank-edge are between 33% and 50% (left), or the total sum of bank-edge and close levees is  $> 90\%$  but bank-edge are  $\leq 33\%$  (right). Class C: bank-edge levees are  $> 50\%$  of the reach (left), or bank-edge levees are between 33% and 50% but the total sum of bank-edge and close levees is  $> 90\%$  (right). Bottom right: definition of set-back, close and bank-edge levees.



Figure A3. 54 Cases of bank-edge levées occurring for most of the reach. In this case, an additional score of 6 or 12 (depending on the % of the reach length) is added.

### Alteration of channel morphology and/or substrate

These indicators include other categories of artificial elements and interventions not considered by previous indicators, which have specific effects on channel morphology and/or on bed substrate. Note that also other structures included in previous indicators may have effects on channel morphology (e.g. bank protections may cause a reduction in channel width, check dams may cause the variation of the bed configuration and substrate, etc.).

#### **A3.4.8 A8: Artificial changes of the river course**

##### **DESCRIPTION**

This indicator accounts for artificial past changes in the river course (recent or in historical periods). This indicator does not require a historical research of artificial channel changes, which would be out of the scope of this evaluation, but only well known and relevant changes should be considered (e.g. meander cutting, change of position of river mouth, etc.). These kinds of artificial changes of the river course may have altered the natural channel morphology and modified natural geomorphological and hydraulic processes, with resulting loss of physical habitats.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal:</i> Reach	<i>Lateral:</i> Entire floodplain (including recent terraces)
<b>Measurement:</b> Historical sources and/or remote sensing	

The indicator does not include artificial modifications that affect only the channel size and not the planform (e.g. channel narrowing). Conversely, the indicator does include overall channelization interventions drastically modifying the planform pattern, such as dredging, straightening, or even digging a new channel (e.g. in areas with water stagnation to promote drainage). These **historical land reclamation schemes by drainage, carried out by excavating new channels or by dredging existing ones**, can be quite frequent especially in Low-Energy systems where partly (or totally) artificial channels do not necessarily display bank protections or artificial levées because of the low energy of the river and/or the

continuous maintenance of such channels may prevent morphological changes and recovery. For such cases, i.e. when an additional score for A6 and/or A7 is not already applied, an additional score for this indicator is assigned (see the following table) because these historical artificial changes still have a large impact on the current morphological conditions due to the low recovery capacity of the system.

The indicator is mainly assessed using historical sources (available information about historical changes). Remote sensing can provide a support by identifying abandoned channel forms in the floodplain (e.g. traces of old meanders or relict oxbow lakes, etc.), but historical information is in any case needed to assess whether morphological changes were due to human interventions.

The indicator is applied only to **partly confined and unconfined** channels. In the case of confined channels, artificial changes in the river course are infrequent and usually only concern limited portions of the channel. To determine whether classes B or C should be assigned, the indicator evaluates the length of the reach affected by the artificial change in river course compared to the total reach length.

#### **EXTENDED ANSWERS**

Confinement type		Partly confined or unconfined
A	Absence of artificial changes of river course in the past (meanders cut-off, channel diversions, etc.).	
B	Presence of artificial changes of river course (meanders cut-off, channel diversions, etc.) in the past for $\leq 10\%$ of the reach length. In the case of presence of anabranches, the length of the reach is the sum of all the lengths of single anabranches.	
C	Presence of artificial changes of river course (meanders cut-off, channel diversions, etc.) in the past for $> 10\%$ of the reach length.	
<i>Additional scores</i> <i>In the case of historical drainage and dredging works for <math>&gt; 50\%</math> of the reach, <u>when an additional score for A6 and/or A7 is not already applied, add 6.</u></i> <i>In the case of historical drainage and dredging works for <math>&gt; 80\%</math> of the reach, <u>when an additional score for A6 and/or A7 is not already applied, add 12.</u></i>		



## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

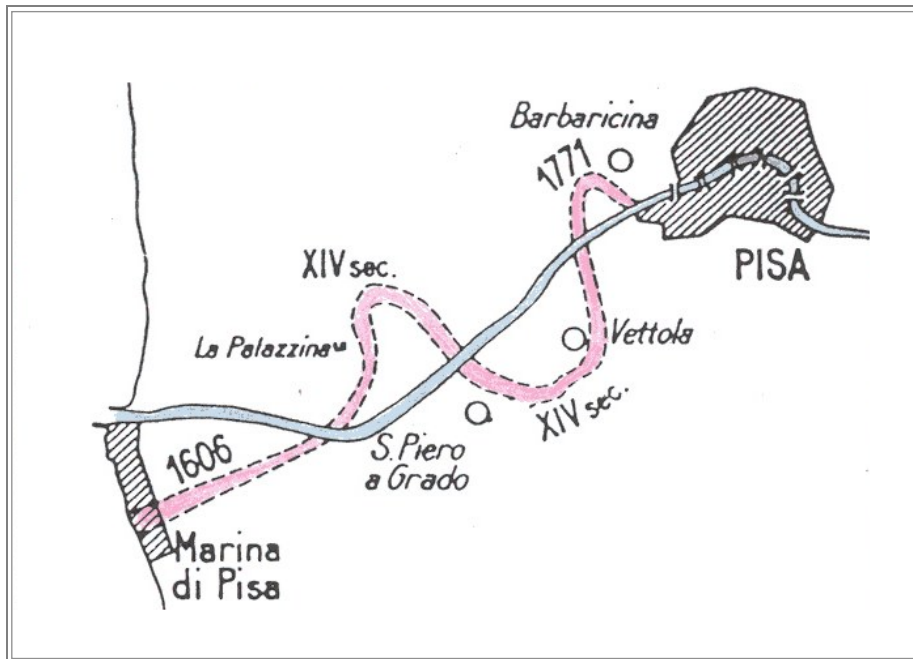


Figure A3. 55 Artificial changes of river course.

Example of well known artificial changes (meander cut-offs, change of position of river mouth) occurring in historical times.



Figure A3. 56 Drainage and dredging works in Low-Energy, fine-grained streams.

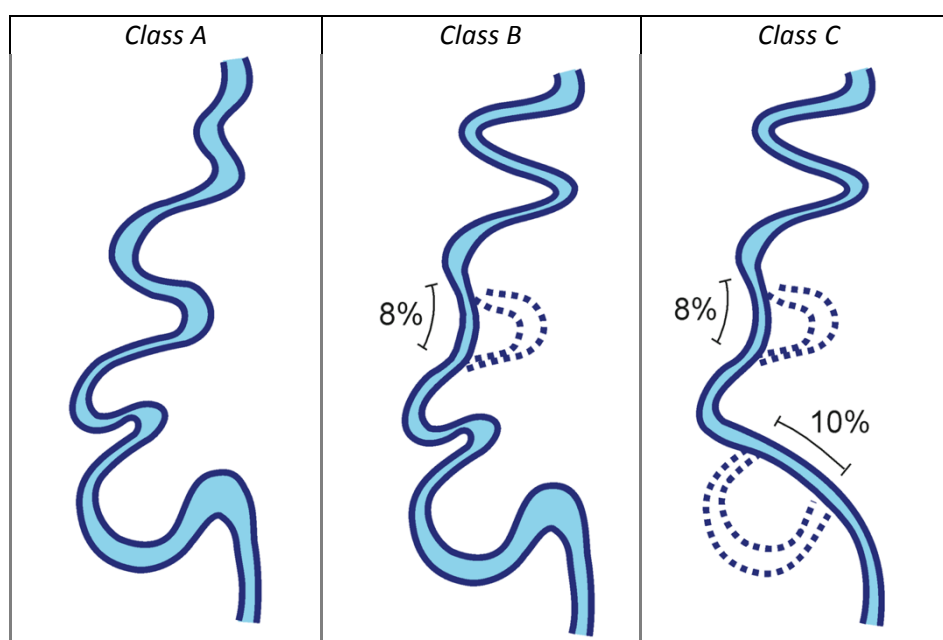


Figure A3. 57 Artificial changes of river course.

**Class A:** absence of artificial changes. **Class B:** artificial changes for a length  $\leq 10\%$  of the reach. **Class C:** artificial changes for a length  $> 10\%$  of the reach.

#### A3.4.9 A9: Other bed stabilization structures

##### DESCRIPTION

This indicator accounts for other crossing structures which, in general, cause increases in the rigidity of the bed, paving or reinforcement, but without significantly altering the sediment transport. These include **bed sills and ramps** built to reduce bed incision, often in association with bridges, and **revetments of the channel bed**, both impermeable and permeable. Bed revetments cause strong alteration in channel morphology in terms of the disappearance of sediment and related bed forms (loss of habitats) as well as in terms of an alteration of vertical continuity with groundwater (hyporheic zone). These structures are common in steep mountain reaches (to prevent channel incision), but also along urban reaches in partly confined and unconfined channels (to prevent channel sedimentation, e.g. on alluvial fans).

The indicator accounts for bed stabilization structure frequency or percentage and type (permeable or impermeable), respectively, for sills/ramps (also taking into account the reach slope) and revetments.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal:</i> Reach	<i>Lateral:</i> Channel
<b>Measurements:</b> Map layer of interventions, remote sensing, field survey	

The evaluation is carried out by remote sensing, except for small confined channels, where these structures are not visible (except where very high resolution images are available). When the structures are not visible from remote sensing, the map layer of interventions and/or field survey is necessary, recording only the number of structures (additional information on typology, characteristics is not required).

## EXTENDED ANSWERS

Confinement type		All types
A	Absence of other bed stabilization structures (bed sills, ramps) and revetments.	
B	<p>Presence of bed sills and/or ramps with relatively low density, i.e. <math>\leq 1</math> every <math>d</math> on average along the reach, where <math>d = 200</math> m for steep channels (bed slope <math>S &gt; 1\%</math>) or <math>d = 1000</math> m for bed slope <math>S \leq 1\%</math>, and/or limited presence of revetments: bed revetments occupy a length <math>\leq 25\%</math> of the reach with permeable systems and/or <math>\leq 15\%</math> with impermeable systems.</p> <p>In the case of anabranches, the reach length is the sum of the lengths of anabranches.</p>	
C1	Presence of bed sills/ramps with a density of $> 1$ every $d$ on average in the reach and/or significant presence of revetments: bed revetments occupy a length $\leq 50\%$ of the reach with permeable systems and/or $\leq 33\%$ with impermeable systems.	
C2	Widespread presence of revetments: bed revetments occupy a length $> 50\%$ of the reach with permeable systems or $> 33\%$ with impermeable systems.	
Additional scores		
For a high density of bed revetments, i.e. permeable revetments $> 80\%$ of the reach length or impermeable revetments $> 50\%$ , add 6.		
For an extremely high density of impermeable bed revetments (i.e. $> 80\%$ of the reach length), add 12.		

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

*Class A*



*Class B*



*Class B*



*Class C1*



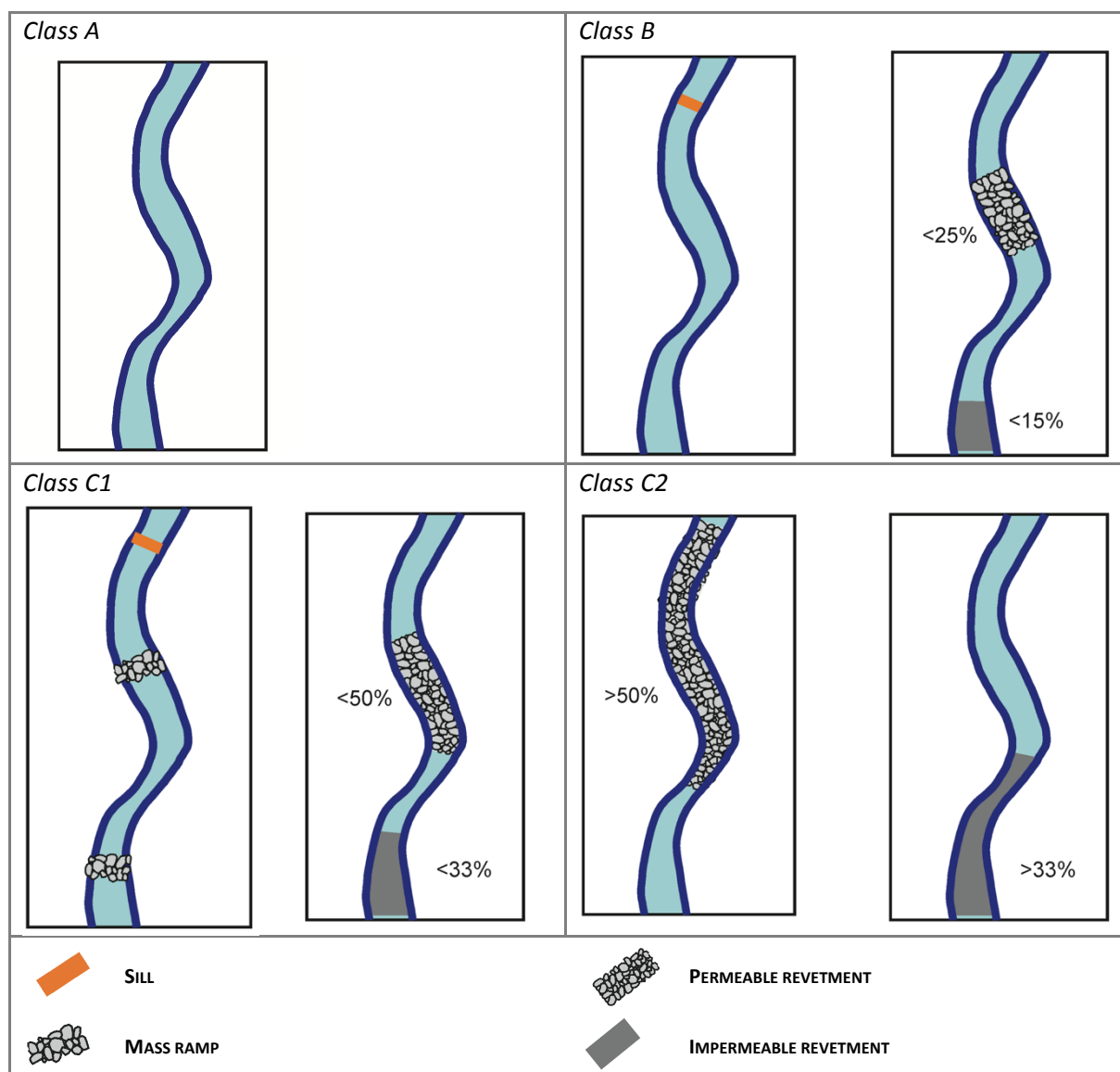
*Class C2*



Figure A3. 58 Other bed stabilization structures and revetments.

*Class A*: total absence of other bed stabilization structures or revetments. *Class B*: presence of sills (first row on right) or mass ramps (second row on left) with low density. *Class C1*: various sills and partial bed revetment. *Class C2*: total bed revetment with impermeable systems.





**Figure A3. 59 Other bed stabilization structures and/or revetments.**

**Class A:** absence of bed stabilization structures and/or revetments. **Class B:** bed stabilization structures (sills, ramps) with a density  $\leq 1$  every  $d$  ( $d = 200$  m for steep channels,  $d = 1000$  m for bed slope  $S \leq 1\%$ ), or permeable revetments with length  $\leq 25\%$  of the reach and/or impermeable revetments with length  $\leq 15\%$  of the reach. **Class C1:** bed stabilization structures (sills, ramps) with a density  $> 1$  every  $d$ , or permeable revetments with a length  $\leq 50\%$  of the reach and/or impermeable revetments  $\leq 33\%$  of the reach. **Class C2:** permeable revetments  $> 50\%$  of the reach and/or impermeable revetments  $> 33\%$  of the reach.

## Maintenance and removal interventions

### A3.4.10 A10: Sediment removal

#### DESCRIPTION

This indicator aims to provide an evaluation of the existence and relative intensity of sediment removal. Such activity may induce several negative effects, in terms of morphological processes and evolution (bed incision) as well as impacting on the river ecosystem (Rinaldi et al., 2005).

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Reach	<i>Lateral</i> : Channel
<b>Measurements</b> : Map layer of interventions, remote sensing, field survey	

Sediment removal includes either mining activity (excavation of gravel or sand pits for sediment exploitation) and interventions aimed at channel dredging and re-sectioning to reduce flood risk (e.g., channel lowering and widening). The indicator does not account for local sediment removal, such as in the case of maintenance upstream from retention basin/check dams (these effects are already accounted for by indicator A4).

The evaluation is slightly different between **confined** and **partly confined - unconfined channels**. In the former case, the investigated time period is exclusively that of the **last 20 years** (as with the following two indicators). The difference between the three classes is determined by the extension of any removal activity (absent, localized, widespread in the reach) during this time period. In the case of partly confined - and unconfined channels, two time periods are considered: (a) **recent activity** (the last 20 years, as for confined channels); (b) **past activity**, i.e. over the last 100 years. The 1950s is generally the decade of maximum activity in many European countries (Rinaldi et al., 2005) but in other countries, intense sediment dredging may have occurred in the first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century. Information on recent activity can be obtained from public agencies in charge of river management and maintenance and/or from field evidence. Regarding past activity, the indicator intends to provide a gross evaluation limited to the presence or absence of such activity, based on available information, since a quantification of extracted volumes is not possible. For this, **two situations** are considered: (1) absent or negligible past activity of sediment removal; (2) past activity of sediment removal: when there is reliable information that the number of mining sites and the extracted volumes are significant (not negligible). Indirect indicators of intense activity may be the number of mining sites at present or in the past (from aerial photos of the 1950s) in the vicinity of the river channel, intense incision (see CA3) that is attributable to mining activity, etc.

### EXTENDED ANSWERS

<b>Confinement type</b>		Confined
<b>Range of application</b>		Not evaluated in the case of ERT type 1
<b>A</b>	Evidence/reliable information of absent significant sediment removal activity during the last 20 years.	
<b>B</b>	Evidence/reliable information of significant but localized (only one site) sediment removal activity during the last 20 years.	
<b>C</b>	Evidence/reliable information of significant and widespread (more sites along the reach) sediment removal activity during the last 20 years.	

<b>Confinement type</b>		Partly confined or unconfined
<b>A</b>	Absence of significant sediment removal activity either in the past (over the last 100 years) and during about the last 20 years.	
<b>B1</b>	Sediment removal activity in the past (last 100 years) but absent during about the last 20 years.	
<b>B2</b>	Sediment removal activity during the last 20 years but absent in the past (last 100 years).	
<b>C</b>	Sediment removal activity in the past (last 100 years) and during the last 20 years.	

### ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

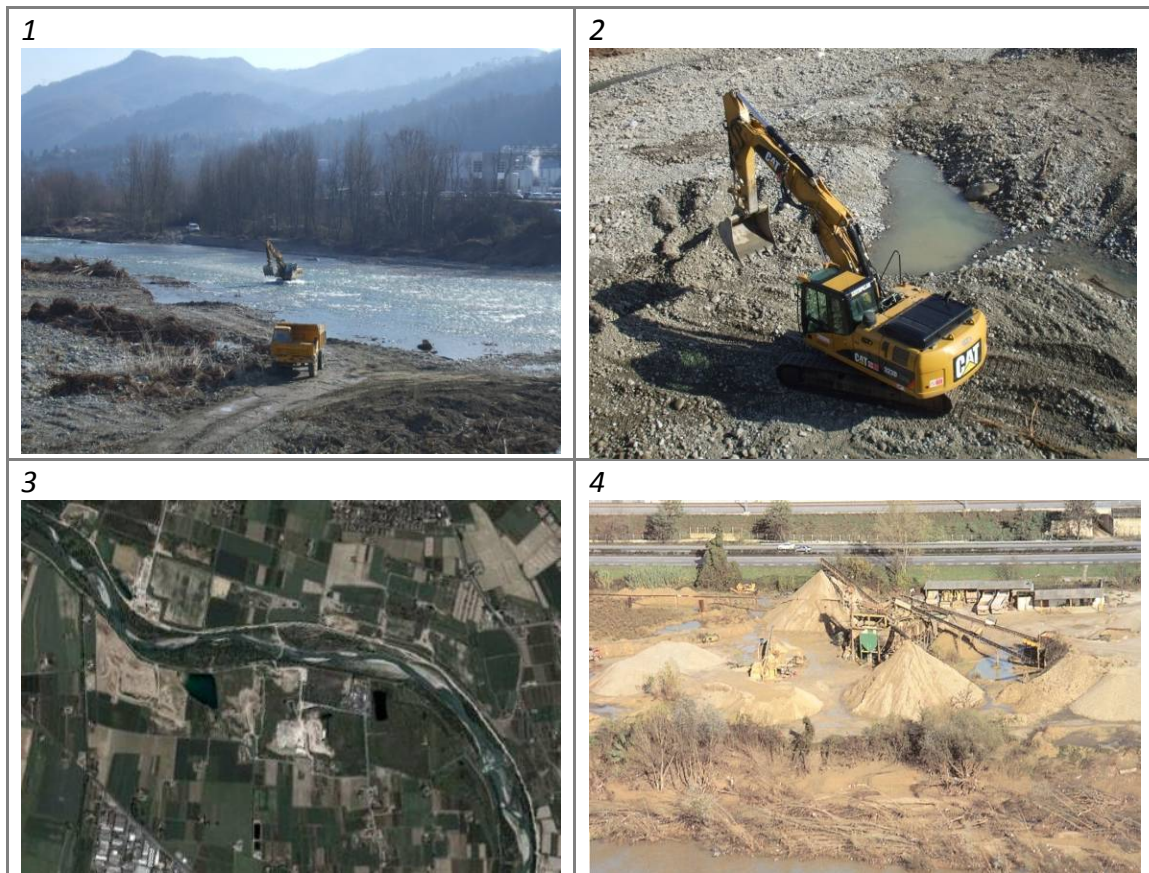


Figure A3. 60 Sediment removal.

(1) and (2) Recent and current activity; (3) and (4) indirect indicators of past activity are the presence of mining sites. In the case of partly- and unconfined channels, *Class B1, B2* or *C* depends on the occurrence of sediment removal in the past (since 1950's) and/or in recent times (last 20 years).



### A3.4.11 A11: Wood removal

#### DESCRIPTION

Wood removal can periodically be carried out by various public agencies in charge of river management and maintenance, usually in conjunction with cutting vegetation (see next indicator) and/or sediment removal. Typically, only larger sized woody material is removed, while smaller woody debris (small trunks, branches) is left in the channel.

Wood removal is justifiable for safety reasons (e.g. to avoid creation of wood jams at bridges during flood events), however has a significant impact on the fluvial system (e.g. reduction of hydrodynamic complexity, and therefore morphological and sedimentary diversity, with the disappearance of physical habitats and organic material).

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal:</i> Reach	<i>Lateral:</i> Channel and floodplain
<b>Measurements:</b> Information by public agencies	

The indicator is not applied in areas of **tundra in northern Europe**, where woody vegetation is naturally absent, as well as in reaches above the tree-line ( i.e. the same criteria of applicability as *F11*). For its application, it is necessary to acquire information on **total** or **partial wood removal** (where partial indicates the removal of only some very large wood pieces or localised removal in specific sites) **during the last 20 years**. This time interval is used both because of the availability of information from public agencies, and also because of the natural capability of streams to partly re-establish a sufficient quantity of wood from the banks, hillslopes and upstream reaches. Where reliable information is lacking, the answer is *B*. As for indicator *A10*, wood removal from retention basins/check dams is not considered.

#### EXTENDED ANSWERS

<b>Confinement type</b>		All types
<b>Range of application</b>		Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation, such as in north-european tundra
<b>A</b>	Absence of interventions for the removal of large wood (diameter > 10 cm and length > 1 m), at least in the last 20 years, or reliable information of removal of only negligible volumes.	
<b>B</b>	Reliable information/evidence of partial removal (or cut into <1 m long pieces) interventions during the last 20 years, that is, the removal of some elements only, often following flood events. Here are also included the cases of permission for removal by private citizens, even without any intervention from public agencies..	
<b>C</b>	Reliable information/evidence of total removal (or cut into <1 m long pieces) interventions by public agencies during the last 20 years.	

## **ILLUSTRATED GUIDE**

*Class A*



*Class B*



*Class C*



**Figure A3. 61 Wood removal.**

**Class A:** absence of interventions of wood removal. **Class B:** partial removal, including removal by private citizens. **Class C:** total removal by public agencies.

### A3.4.12 A12: Vegetation management

#### DESCRIPTION

**Riparian woody vegetation** in the fluvial corridor (banks, floodplain, recent terraces) and in the channel (mature and pioneer islands) performs several morphological functions, in particular providing wood material (from natural tree death, bank erosion, occasional toppling and breakage, or from hillslope processes in confined channels). Moreover woody vegetation traps sediment and wood material during floods, contributing to the diversity of the river habitat mosaic. **Aquatic vegetation** (either submerged and emerged) may also have a significant impact on river hydraulics, and consequently on sediment accumulation and erosion (e.g. Gurnell et al., 2006, Gurnell and Grabowski, 2016).

Similarly to the previous indicator, periodic interventions of **vegetation cutting** by public agencies are motivated by safety reasons, but they have various impacts on the morphological and biological natural processes related to riparian vegetation. In order to reduce such impacts, public agencies are recently oriented towards **selective cutting** (e.g. involving only the oldest trees) rather than a **total removal**. The latter approach induces lower impact than total vegetation cutting across large areas, however in relation to riparian vegetation, it alters the natural structure of the forest. Vegetation cutting of riparian areas not directly in contact with the channel (but included in the fluvial corridor) has lower morphological and ecological impacts compared to intervention on channel banks. Note that **grazing activity** is considered to be part of vegetation cutting, as it prevents vegetation growth. **Aquatic vegetation** is also frequently removed or partly removed by cutting and/or dredging for safety reasons.

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal:</i> Site/Reach	<i>Lateral:</i> channel and portions of floodplain (partly confined - unconfined) adjacent to the banks, or adjacent plain / hillslopes (confined) for woody and shrub vegetation management; channel for aquatic macrophytes
<b>Measurements:</b> Information from public agencies and field site check (presence of butts)	

The indicator is not applied in to areas of **tundra in northern Europe**, where vegetation is naturally absent. For its application, the operator must collect information from the **public agencies** responsible for vegetation management, and observe in the field any possible evidence of past cuttings (i.e. presence of root wads, or dumping of aquatic vegetation close to the channel). The indicator is applied in the case of significant cutting activity (just a few plants cut along the reach are not considered) in the channel (i.e. on islands), within the areas external to the banks (i.e. including the modern floodplain and recent terraces) and on hillslopes. For riparian vegetation, the investigated area corresponds to the width of functional vegetation identified with the indicator *F12*, assumed to be at least equal to  $nW$ , where  $W$  is the channel length,  $n = 2$  for single-thread or anabranching channels, and  $n = 1$  for braided and wandering channels; for confined channels, up to 50 meters on hillslopes and for each bank. For the same reasons as for the previous indicator, the time interval considered includes the **last 20 years** in the case of **riparian vegetation**, whereas the **last 5 years** are considered for **aquatic vegetation**. The indicator is not applied for those reaches where *F12* and *F13* have not been evaluated.

Three cases of management of riparian vegetation are considered: (A) absence or selective cutting within the areas external to the banks; (B) selective cutting along the banks, or total cutting along the banks for  $\leq 50\%$  of the reach length, or total cutting of any distance within the areas external to the banks; (C) total cutting along the banks for  $> 50\%$  of the reach length.

The evaluation of **aquatic vegetation** management is mainly relevant in the case of **Low-Energy channel morphologies** (i.e. ERT types 17-22) in which the investigated area corresponds to the channel. In such a case, the following three classes of aquatic vegetation management are considered (similarly to indicator A11): (A) absence of cutting and/or dredging; (B) partial cutting and/or dredging; (C) total cutting and/or dredging. The assessments for riparian and aquatic vegetation management are then combined to derive a **combined class** (A, B or C) of the indicator A12 according to the matrix shown in Table 6.

**Table A3. 8 Definition of the classes for the indicator A12 when management of emergent aquatic macrophytes occurs.**

		Management of vegetation in the fluvial corridor		
		A	B	C
<b>Management of aquatic macrophytes</b>	A (absence)	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>
	B (partial cutting and/or dredging)	<b>B</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>
	C (total cutting and/or dredging)	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>C</b>

## EXTENDED ANSWERS

<b>Confinement type</b>		All types
<b>Range of application</b>		Riparian vegetation management: Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation, such as in tundra areas
<b>A</b>	Vegetation not subject to cutting interventions along the banks, or only affected by selective cutting within the areas external to the banks (floodplain for partly confined - unconfined, hillslopes for confined) during the last 20 years and absence of cutting and/or dredging of the aquatic macrophytes along the reach during the last 5 years (case A).	
<b>B</b>	<p>- Vegetation subject to interventions of selective cutting along the banks for any distance, or total cutting for a length <math>\leq 50\%</math> of the reach; or total cuttings of any distance within the areas external to the banks (last 20 years), and absence of cutting and/or dredging or reliable information/evidence of partial cutting and/or dredging interventions by public agencies of the aquatic macrophytes during the last 5 years along the reach;</p> <p>Or</p> <p>- Management of vegetation in the river corridor as in case A, and reliable information/evidence of partial or total cutting and/or dredging interventions by public agencies of the aquatic macrophytes during the last 5 years along the reach.</p> <p>In the case of anabranches, the reach length is the sum of the lengths of the anabranches.</p>	
<b>C</b>	<p>- Vegetation subject to total cutting along the banks for a distance <math>&gt; 50\%</math> of the reach during the last 20 years, and any case of management of aquatic macrophytes;</p> <p>Or</p> <p>- Management of vegetation in the river corridor as in case B, and reliable information/evidence of total cutting and/or dredging interventions by public agencies of the aquatic macrophytes during the last 5 years along the reach.</p>	



## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

*Class A*



*Class B*



*Class C*



**Figure A3. 62 Vegetation management.**

**Class A:** absence of vegetation cutting interventions. **Class B:** interventions of selective cutting. **Class C:** interventions of total vegetation cutting along most of the reach. Management of emergent aquatic macrophytes is also evaluated in the indicator A12, but only in the case of Low-Energy sinuous, meandering or anabranching channels (see Guide for Compilation of the Evaluation Forms for details).

### **A3.5 Channel Adjustments**

This set of indicators aims to assess channel adjustments (planimetric and vertical changes) which have occurred in previous decades. Only channel adjustments related to human impacts should be quantified, therefore it is crucial to identify the controlling factors of such adjustments. Although channel adjustments are assessed using a simplified method, in most cases it should be possible to obtain a reliable interpretation of their causes by considering the magnitude of these adjustments, as well as the type and frequency of human impacts at the catchment and reach scale. This latter information should be available from the analysis of the previous set of indicators (i.e., indicators of artificial elements). These indicators, however, do not provide a detailed reconstruction of past channel evolution (i.e., channel evolutionary trajectory) but only an overall evaluation of past channel instability. Since these indicators are based on a comparison with a historical condition, only adjustments in channel form are considered, while possible adjustments in bed substrate (e.g., armouring, clogging, burial or siltation) are not included and are separately assessed by the indicator *F10*.

Although the indicators of channel adjustments are based on an analysis of changes occurring over past decades, the **historical morphology is not considered as a 'reference' condition**. In fact, these indicators aim to **evaluate channel instability** as evidence of alteration related to human factors.

Since the time interval suitable for this type of evaluation is of the order of approximately 50 – 100 years, should the **river morphology** have been **artificially modified in historical times** before this time interval (e.g. during the 18<sup>th</sup> century), as is often the case in many European fluvial systems, these historical condition should not be considered for the evaluation of channel instability. Even in such cases, the evaluation should be carried out with reference to the same time interval (50 – 100 years). This could probably results in a condition of artificial 'stability' related to the fixed channel configuration, however in such cases the alterations related to the artificial conditions are widely taken into account by the indicators of artificial elements and functionality. Note, however, that a fixed channel will not necessarily be stable: although some types of adjustment will be prevented (e.g. widening or meandering in a river with fixed banks), other types of changes are still possible (e.g. narrowing, aggradation).

#### **A3.5.1 CA1: Adjustments in channel pattern**

##### **DESCRIPTION**

This indicator evaluates the occurrence and intensity of adjustments in channel morphological configuration, i.e. the change in channel pattern (sinuous, meandering, braided, etc.). A change in channel pattern during past decades is generally a symptom of an alteration of some of the processes controlling channel morphology (in particular of the driving variables, i.e. flow regime and sediment transport). Significant changes in channel pattern cause an alteration of river physical habitats related to the different channel morphologies.

Channel pattern changes due to **direct artificial interventions** are also considered by this indicator (e.g. a braided channel which moves toward a single-thread channel because of



channelization; or a meandering channel becoming sinuous because of artificial meander cutting). However, the cases when a **natural cause of channel adjustments** is clearly recognized (e.g. a landslide dam or a volcanic eruption which determines the channel pattern change) are not evaluated as an alteration. Furthermore, should the reach have recently been subject to a **morphological river restoration** (e.g. removal of artificial constraints or “morphological reconstruction”), the indicator *CA1* is not applied (nor is indicator *CA2*). In fact, channel pattern change from a former altered situation is not considered as a negative channel adjustment (note that possible positive effects of restoration activities are already taken into account through the improved functionality and the reduction of artificial elements).

The assessment of the first two indicators *CA1* and *CA2* is based on the observation and analysis of **aerial photos**, comparing the current conditions with a representative, historical situation. Since aerial photos suitable for this type of assessment are variable across European countries, **a range between about the 1930s and 1960s** is suggested. Aerial photos suitable for these indicators should possibly have a homogeneous (scale wise) national cover, with sufficient resolution for this type of assessment. For example, in Italy a homogeneous national cover of aerial photos dated 1954-55 (IGM GAI) is used (scale of about 1:33.000). The choice of this time interval is also motivated by the fact that for most Italian rivers, the most significant part of the planimetric adjustments over the last 100 years generally occurred from about the 1950s to the early 1990s (Rinaldi and Simon, 1998; Surian and Rinaldi, 2003; Surian et al., 2009), in coincidence with economic development after World War II. A similar rationale is applicable to many other European countries (e.g., Liébault and Piégay, 2002; Wyżga, 2008).

In the countries where aerial photos with these characteristics are not available, **historical maps** which are evaluated to be suitable for this analysis can be considered, even if the interval of time is slightly precedent to the 1930s (e.g., the Cassini historical maps in Ireland and early Ordnance Survey maps in the UK).

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Reach	<i>Lateral</i> : Entire floodplain (including recent terraces)
<b>Measurements</b> : Remote sensing / GIS analysis	

The indicator *CA1* is applied to **all river types**. However, the potential of aerial imagery analysis is limited by **stream size**, vegetation cover and the resolution of the imagery that is available. Where streams are too small to be observed and quantified by aerial photos, the indicator *CA1* (as well as *CA2*) is not applied. A fixed threshold in stream size is avoided, but the operator should evaluate whether the **resolution of available aerial photos** is sufficient to carry out the assessment.

The indicator is applied both to confined and partly confined - unconfined, although some differences in the classes exist. In the case of **confined channels**, only two classes are distinguished (*A* and *B*) because a significant change in channel pattern (e.g. from braided to single-thread) and/or in channel width (channel narrowing: see *CA2*) consequently leads to a transformation into a partly confined or unconfined channel. In the cases of **partly confined - unconfined channels**, the assignation to class *B* or *C* depends on whether the change has occurred between similar morphologies (e.g. from meandering to sinuous) or

between markedly different morphologies (e.g. from braided to sinuous), as defined in Table 7.

**Table A3. 9** Classes for the different possible adjustments in channel morphologies.

**Morphologies:** ST = straight, S = sinuous, M = Meandering, W = Wandering, B = Braided, A = Anabranching;  $\Leftrightarrow$  = change in both directions. **Class:** B = change to a similar morphology; C = change to a markedly different morphology.

<i><b>Morphology</b></i>	<i><b>Class</b></i>	<i><b>Morphology</b></i>	<i><b>Class</b></i>
<i>ST <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> S</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>S <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> A</i>	<i>B</i>
<i>ST <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> M</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>M <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> W</i>	<i>C</i>
<i>ST <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> W</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>M <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> B</i>	<i>C</i>
<i>ST <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> B</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>M <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> A</i>	<i>B</i>
<i>ST <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> A</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>W <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> B</i>	<i>B</i>
<i>S <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> M</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>W <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> A</i>	<i>C</i>
<i>S <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> W</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>B <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> A</i>	<i>C</i>
<i>S <math>\Leftrightarrow</math> B</i>	<i>C</i>		

In many cases, a qualitative observation of the channel pattern in the two aerial photos is sufficient to evaluate whether a significant channel pattern adjustment has occurred (e.g. from braided to single-thread). In other cases, measurement of some indices for defining channel morphology (sinuosity index, braiding index, etc.) may be necessary. Measurement of channel pattern indices requires a GIS analysis, including the georectification of the analysed images.

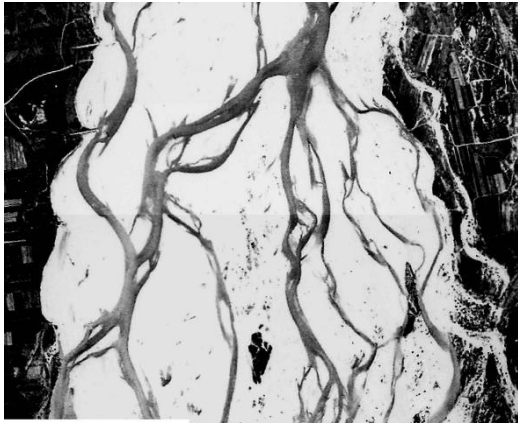
**EXTENDED ANSWERS**

<b>Confinement type</b>		Confined
<b>Range of application</b>		Not evaluated in the case of too small streams where resolution of available aerial photos is insufficient to allow for the assessment. It does not apply to the case of restored channels which were artificially fixed during the 1930s - 1960s.
<b>A</b>	Absence of changes of channel pattern from 1930s-1960s.	
<b>B</b>	Change of channel pattern from 1930s-1960s.	

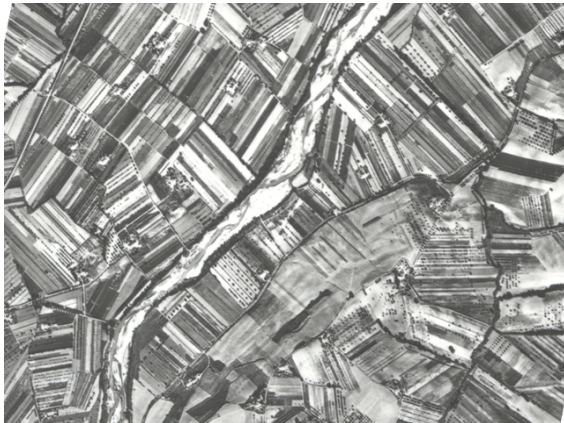
<b>Confinement type</b>		Partly confined or unconfined
<b>Range of application</b>		Not evaluated in the case of too small streams where resolution of available aerial photos is insufficient to allow for the assessment. It does not apply to the case of restored channels which were artificially fixed during the 1930s - 1960s.
<b>A</b>	Absence of changes of channel pattern from 1930s-1960s.	
<b>B</b>	Change to a similar channel pattern from 1930s-1960s (Table A3. 9).	
<b>C</b>	Change to a different channel pattern from 1930s-1960s (Table A3. 9).	

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

*Class A*



*Class B*



*Class C*



Figure A3. 63 Adjustments in channel pattern.

(On the left aerial photo dated 1954, on the right the current situation). *Class A*: the channel maintains a prevailing braided pattern, although channel narrowing occurred. *Class B*: change from wandering to sinuous. *Class C*: change from braided to sinuous.

### A3.5.2 CA2: Adjustments in channel width

#### DESCRIPTION

This indicator evaluates the occurrence and amount of changes in channel width from a period included in the interval 1930s - 1960s to present day. River channels can show considerable change in channel width while maintaining their general channel pattern morphology, because of direct artificial interventions (e.g. artificial narrowing, groynes, etc.), but also because of an alteration of the driving variables controlling channel morphology (channel-forming and sediment discharges). The existence of significant adjustments in channel width variations in a temporal interval of 50-80 years is considered here as evidence of morphological instability, and may have caused strong physical habitat modifications. The indicator also includes those cases where change in channel width was caused by direct artificial interventions (e.g. narrowing of a braided channel following channelization). As for CA1, when a natural cause is clearly recognized (e.g. a landslide dam or a volcanic eruption which determines the channel pattern change), the channel adjustment is not evaluated as an alteration. Furthermore, in the case of a river which was artificially fixed in the 1930s – 1960s and has been recently subject to a morphological river restoration (e.g. removal of artificial constraints or “morphological reconstruction”), this indicator is not applied.

In the countries where aerial photos with these characteristics are not available, **historical maps** which are evaluated to be suitable for this analysis can be considered, even if the interval of time is slightly precedent to the 1930s (e.g., the Cassini historical maps in Ireland and early Ordnance Survey maps in the UK).

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal:</i> Reach	<i>Lateral:</i> Entire floodplain (including recent terraces)
<b>measurements:</b> Remote sensing / GIS analysis	

As for the previous indicator, this indicator is applied to **all river types**, excluding the case of streams which are too small to be observed and quantified by aerial photos. A fixed threshold in stream size is avoided, but the operator should evaluate whether the **resolution of available aerial photos** is sufficient to carry out the assessment.

The indicator is applied both to confined and partly confined - unconfined, although some differences in the classes exist. In **confined channels**, only two classes (A and B) are defined (in fact significant channel narrowing would determine a change to an unconfined channel). Measurement of changes in channel width requires a GIS analysis, including the georectification of the analysed images, the digitizing of channel margins and the measurement of the channel width.

**EXTENDED ANSWERS**

<b>Confinement type</b>		Confined
<b>Range of application</b>		Not evaluated in the case of too small streams where resolution of available aerial photos is insufficient to allow for the assessment. It does not apply to the case of restored channels which were artificially fixed during the 1930s - 1960s.
<b>A</b>	Absent or limited changes in channel width ( $\leq 15\%$ ) from 1930s-1960s.	
<b>B</b>	Changes in channel width $> 15\%$ from 1930s-1960s.	

<b>Confinement type</b>		Partly confined or unconfined
<b>Range of application</b>		Not evaluated in the case of too small streams where resolution of available aerial photos is insufficient to allow for the assessment. It does not apply to the case of channels which were artificially fixed during the 1930s - 1960s and have then been restored.
<b>A</b>	Absent or limited changes in channel width ( $\leq 15\%$ ) from 1930s-1960s.	
<b>B</b>	Moderate changes in channel width ( $15\div 35\%$ ) from 1930s-1960s.	
<b>C</b>	Intense changes in channel width ( $> 35\%$ ) from 1930s-1960s.	



## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE



**Figure A3. 64 Adjustments in channel width.**

(On the left aerial photo dated 1954, on the right the current situation). Class A: very limited channel narrowing ( $\leq 15\%$ ). Class B: channel narrowing from 15% to 35% of channel width in 1930s-60s. Class C: very intense channel narrowing ( $> 35\%$ ).



### A3.5.3 CA3: Bed-level adjustments

#### DESCRIPTION

This indicator accounts for the occurrence and amount of bed-level adjustments (incision or aggradation). Bed-level changes in alluvial channels may be caused by changes of some factor controlling channel morphology, particularly by alterations of flow and/or sediment discharge. When bed-level adjustments occur over a relatively short time period, they are generally related to some human impact (e.g. land use changes at the catchment scale, dams, sediment mining, etc.). They are considered among the most relevant physical alterations affecting a number of processes (e.g. lateral connection with the floodplain, alteration of in-channel physical habitats, etc.).

Spatial scale	
<i>Longitudinal</i> : Reach	<i>Lateral</i> : Channel
<b>Measurements</b> : Data from cross-sections / longitudinal profiles, field survey	

This indicator is based on **existing data** (e.g. longitudinal profiles or cross sections), information from existing literature, and **field evidence** of bed-level changes. Differently from planimetric changes, in this case bed-level changes are referred to a larger time period, i.e. about the last 100 years. This is related to the fact that, according to existing research (e.g., Surian and Rinaldi, 2003; Surian et al., 2009; Liébault and Piégay, 2002; Liébault et al., 2012), one or more phases of incision followed a period of predominant aggradation or equilibrium occurring until about the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century in many European countries. This simplification allows a better utilization of field evidence, consisting of an evaluation of the differences in elevation between a modern floodplain and recent terraces, the latter coinciding with the historical floodplain before the incision (Rinaldi, 2003; Liébault et al., 2012). These observations can also be supported by the analysis of aerial photos, which can allow the collection of detailed chronological information on the surfaces where differences in elevation are measured in the field.

On the basis of available data and/or field evidence and survey, an evaluation of the range of bed-level changes (rather than a precise value) is obtained. In the cases of an **absolute lack of data**, field evidence or other sources of information, this indicator is omitted and is not included in the final score.

Similarly to CA1 and CA2, this indicator applies both to **confined and partly confined - unconfined**, but with some differences. In the case of partly confined - unconfined channels, a class C2 is defined to account for cases of dramatic changes in bed elevation (> 6 m), which are very unusual in the case of confined channels.

**EXTENDED ANSWERS**

<b>Confinement type</b>		Confined
<b>Range of application</b>		Not evaluated in the case of absolute lack of data and field evidence
<b>A</b>	Negligible bed-level changes ( $\leq 0.5$ m).	
<b>B</b>	Limited or moderate bed-level changes ( $0.5\div 3$ m).	
<b>C</b>	Intense bed-level changes ( $> 3$ m).	

<b>Confinement type</b>		Partly confined or unconfined
<b>Range of application</b>		Not evaluated in the case of absolute lack of data and field evidence
<b>A</b>	Negligible bed-level changes ( $\leq 0.5$ m): bed elevation unchanged due to altimetric stability or to recovery by aggradation of a previous phase of incision (e.g. due to a weir).	
<b>B</b>	Limited or moderate bed-level changes ( $\leq 3$ m). Incised channel: differences in elevation exist between new floodplain (if existing) and recent terraces, but in many cases not evident. Aggraded channel: bed-elevation higher than floodplain elevation.	
<b>C1</b>	Intense bed-level changes ( $3\div 6$ m). Highly incised channel: very evident differences in elevation between new floodplain (if existing) and recent terraces, with the presence of evidence in several forms, including high and unstable banks, destabilization of transversal structures, exposed bridge piers, etc. Highly aggraded channel: marked differences in elevation between channel bed (much higher) and floodplain.	
<b>C2</b>	Very intense bed-level changes ( $> 6$ m). Exceptionally incised channel (e.g. following intense mining activity in the past). or exceptionally aggraded channel Usually, data or reliable information about such important changes exist	

## ILLUSTRATED GUIDE

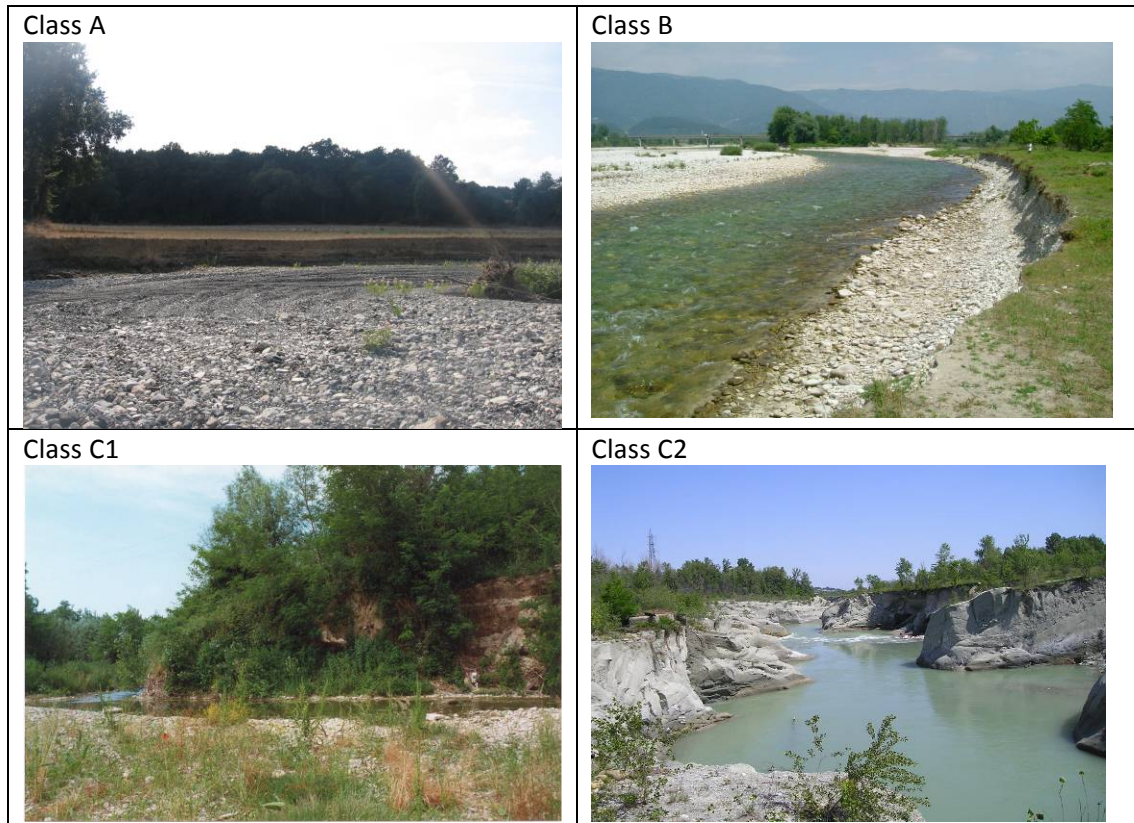


Figure A3. 65 Bed-level changes.

**Class A:** negligible incision ( $\leq 0.5$  m). **Class B:** incision from limited to moderate (from 0.5 to 3 m). **Class C1:** intense incision ( $> 3$  m). **Class C2:** very intense incision ( $> 6$  m) causing the complete erosion of the alluvial deposits.

## FIELD EVIDENCE

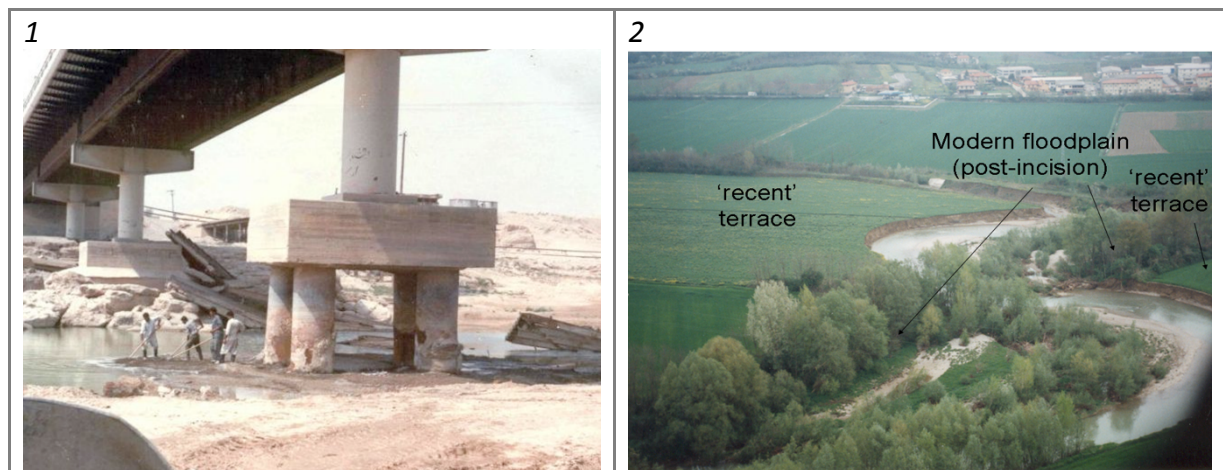
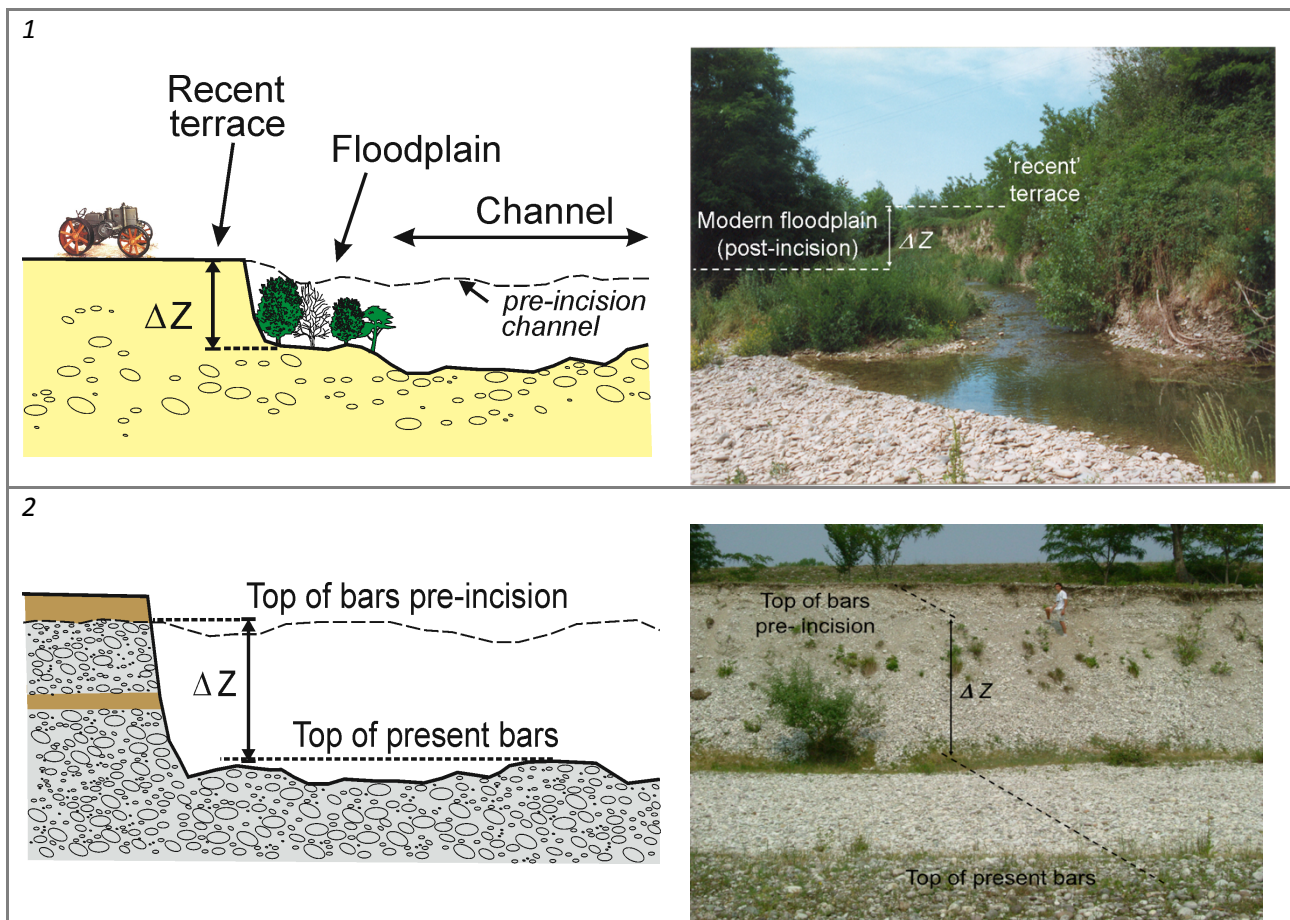


Figure A3. 66 Field evidence of incision.

(1) Exposed bridge piers. (2) Differences in level between modern (post – incision) floodplain and recent terrace (the latter corresponding to the pre – incision floodplain).



**Figure A3. 67** Estimation of the amount of incision based on differences in elevation among surfaces.

(1) Measurement of difference in elevation ( $\Delta Z$ ) between modern floodplain and recent terrace (pre- incision floodplain); (2) measurement of difference in elevation between the top of gravel on an eroding bank (corresponding to the top of bars before incision) and top of present channel bars.

### A3.6 Scores

For each indicator, the **partial score** relative to classes *A*, *B* or *C* must be circled in the apposite column on the right (first column on the right side of the answers). In the following column, the **progressive score** is reported, so that the total deviation is immediately available at the end of the compilation of the evaluation form. In the last column on the right (inside the dotted lines), operator should express a **degree of confidence** in the answer, considering three possible cases: (1) *High*, (2) *Medium*, (3) *Low*. This can be indicated between class *A* and *B*, or between *B* and *C*. A simplified estimation of the overall uncertainty degree associated with the final evaluation can be obtained that is the range of variation of the final score. An example of the procedure can be visualized in the **compiled evaluation form** (see later).

For some indicators, two **additional scores** (“extra-penalties” of 6 and 12, respectively) can be added in case of extremely dense, dominant presence of artificial elements along the reach. This rule concern the indicators A4, A6, A7, and A9, and was included to adequately rank river reaches with only one or just a few types of artificial elements but at very large extensions and/or density, heavily affecting the overall morphological conditions.

On the bottom of the evaluation form, the Morphological Alteration Index, the Morphological Quality Index and the Hydro-Morphological Quality Index are calculated.

The **Morphological Alteration Index (MAI)** is calculated as:

$$MAI = S_{tot} / S_{max}$$

where  $S_{max}$  is the maximum possible deviation for the given stream typology (it corresponds to the sum of the class *C* scores for all the questions applicable to the study case).

The **Morphological Quality Index (MQI)** is expressed as:

$$MQI = 1 - MAI$$

The **Hydro-Morphological Quality Index (HMQI)** is expressed as:

$$HMQI = 1 - S_{tot} / S_{max}$$

where  $S_{tot}$  include the score of the additional indicator  $A1_H$ .

### A3.7 Sub-indices

Given the structure divided into various aspects and categories, it is possible to calculate a series of sub-indices, that is, to sub-divide the two main indices *MAI* and *MQI* into their components. This can be useful for identifying the negative and positive points of a reach.

The **sub-indices of functionality, artificiality, and channel adjustments** (or “vertical sub-indices”) can be obtained as follows:

#### 1. FUNCTIONALITY

$$MAI_F = S_F \text{ tot} / S_{\text{max}}$$

$$MQI_F = (S_F \text{ max} / S_{\text{max}}) - MAI_F = (S_F \text{ max} - S_F \text{ tot}) / S_{\text{max}}$$

where

$$S_F \text{ tot} = F1 + \dots + F13 \quad (\text{sum of scores of applied F indicators});$$

$$\text{Max}(S_F \text{ tot}) = \text{Max}(F1) + \dots + \text{Max}(F13) \quad (\text{sum of maximum scores of all F indicators});$$

$$\text{Max}(S_A \text{ tot}) = \text{Max}(A1) + \dots + \text{Max}(A12) \quad (\text{sum of maximum scores of all A indicators});$$

$$\text{Max}(S_{CA} \text{ tot}) = \text{Max}(CA1) + \dots + \text{Max}(CA3) \quad (\text{sum of maximum scores of all CA indicators});$$

$$\text{Max}(S_{\text{tot}}) = \text{Max}(S_F \text{ tot}) + \text{Max}(S_A \text{ tot}) + \text{Max}(S_{CA} \text{ tot}) \quad (\text{sum of maximum scores of all indicators});$$

$$S_{na}(F) = \text{sum of maximum scores of not applied F indicators};$$

$$S_{na} = \text{sum of maximum scores of not applied F, A, CA indicator};$$

$$S_F \text{ max} = \text{Max}(S_F \text{ tot}) - S_{na}(F);$$

$$S_{\text{max}} = \text{Max}(S_{\text{tot}}) - S_{na}.$$

#### 2. ARTIFICIALITY

$$MAI_A = S_A \text{ tot} / S_{\text{max}}$$

$$MQI_A = (S_A \text{ max} / S_{\text{max}}) - MAI_A = (S_A \text{ max} - S_A \text{ tot}) / S_{\text{max}}$$

where:

$$S_A \text{ tot} = A1 + \dots + A12 \quad (\text{sum of scores of applied A indicators});$$

$$\text{Max}(S_F \text{ tot}) = \text{Max}(F1) + \dots + \text{Max}(F13) \quad (\text{sum of maximum scores of all F indicators});$$

$$\text{Max}(S_A \text{ tot}) = \text{Max}(A1) + \dots + \text{Max}(A12) \quad (\text{sum of maximum scores of all A indicators});$$

$$\text{Max}(S_{CA} \text{ tot}) = \text{Max}(CA1) + \dots + \text{Max}(CA3) \quad (\text{sum of maximum scores of all CA indicators});$$

$$\text{Max}(S_{\text{tot}}) = \text{Max}(S_F \text{ tot}) + \text{Max}(S_A \text{ tot}) + \text{Max}(S_{CA} \text{ tot}) \quad (\text{sum of maximum scores of all indicators});$$

$$S_{na}(A) = \text{sum of maximum scores of not applied A indicators};$$

$$S_{na} = \text{sum of maximum scores of not applied F, A, CA indicator};$$

$$S_A \text{ max} = \text{Max}(S_A \text{ tot}) - S_{na}(A);$$

$$S_{\text{max}} = \text{Max}(S_{\text{tot}}) - S_{na}.$$

#### 3. CHANNEL ADJUSTMENTS

$$MAI_{CA} = S_{CA} \text{ tot} / S_{\text{max}}$$

$$MQI_{CA} = (S_{CA} \text{ max} / S_{\text{max}}) - MAI_{CA} = (S_{CA} \text{ max} - S_{CA} \text{ tot}) / S_{\text{max}}$$

where:

$$S_{CA} \text{ tot} = CA1 + \dots + CA3 \quad (\text{sum of scores of applied CA indicators});$$

$$\text{Max}(S_F \text{ tot}) = \text{Max}(F1) + \dots + \text{Max}(F13) \quad (\text{sum of maximum scores of all F indicators});$$

$$\text{Max}(S_A \text{ tot}) = \text{Max}(A1) + \dots + \text{Max}(A12) \quad (\text{sum of maximum scores of all A indicators});$$

$$\text{Max}(S_{CA} \text{ tot}) = \text{Max}(CA1) + \dots + \text{Max}(CA3) \quad (\text{sum of maximum scores of all CA indicators});$$

$$\text{Max}(S_{\text{tot}}) = \text{Max}(S_F \text{ tot}) + \text{Max}(S_A \text{ tot}) + \text{Max}(S_{CA} \text{ tot}) \quad (\text{sum of maximum scores of all indicators});$$

$$S_{na}(CA) = \text{sum of maximum scores of not applied CA indicators};$$



$S_{na}$  = sum of maximum scores of not applied F, A, CA indicator;

$S_{CA \max} = \text{Max}(S_{CA \text{ tot}}) - S_{na(CA)}$ ;

$S_{\max} = \text{Max}(S_{\text{tot}}) - S_{na}$ .

To make the analysis more effective, the sub-indices can be related to the maximum value that they can reach for a given category (functionality, artificiality, channel changes). For this purpose, the overall value of MAI and MQI is divided in the part relative to each category as follows:

### 1. FUNCTIONALITY

$MAI_F \max = MQI_F \max = S_F \max / S_{\max}$

### 2. ARTIFICIALITY

$MAI_A \max = MQI_A \max = S_A \max / S_{\max}$

### 3. CHANNEL ADJUSTMENTS

$MAI_{CA} \max = MQI_{CA} \max = S_{CA} \max / S_{\max}$

Note that, in case of additional scores for the indicators A4, A6, A7, A9 such that  $S_{\text{tot}} > S_{\max}$ , the sum of the three sub-indices  $MAI_F + MAI_A + MAI_{CA}$  is  $> 1$ .

Similarly, **continuity**, **morphology** and **vegetation sub-indices** (or “horizontal sub-indices”) can be obtained. For this purpose, some element of artificiality needs to be shared in more categories: in such cases the score assigned to a given indicator is simply divided by the number of categories. The sub-indices are defined as follows.

### 1. CONTINUITY

$MAI_C = MAI_{CL} + MAI_{CLA}$

$MQI_C = MQI_{CL} + MQI_{CLA}$

where:

*C* is for continuity, *CL* is for longitudinal continuity and *CLA* is for lateral continuity

#### 1.1 LONGITUDINAL CONTINUITY

$MAI_{CL} = (F1 + A1 + A2 + A3 + A4/2 + A5) / S_{\max}$

$MQI_{CL} = (S_{CL} \max / S_{\max}) - MAI_{CL}$

where:

$S_{CL} \max = \text{Max}(S_{CL \text{ tot}}) - S_{na(CL)}$ ;

$\text{Max}(S_{CL \text{ tot}}) = \text{Max}(F1) + \text{Max}(A1) + \text{Max}(A2) + \text{Max}(A3) + \text{Max}(A4/2) + \text{Max}(A5)$

(sum of maximum scores of all CL indicators);

$S_{na(CL)} = \text{sum of maximum scores of not applied CL indicators.}$

#### 1.2 LATERAL CONTINUITY

$MAI_{CLA} = (F2 + F3 + F4 + F5 + A6/2 + A7) / S_{\max}$

$MQI_{CLA} = (S_{CLA} \max / S_{\max}) - MAI_{CLA}$

where:

$S_{CLA} \max = \text{Max}(S_{CLA \text{ tot}}) - S_{na(CLA)}$ ;

$\text{Max}(S_{CLA \text{ tot}}) = \text{Max}(F2) + \text{Max}(F3) + \text{Max}(F4) + \text{Max}(F5) + \text{Max}(A6/2) + \text{Max}(A7)$

(sum of maximum scores of all CLA indicators);

$S_{na(CLA)} = \text{sum of maximum scores of not applied CLA indicators.}$

### 2. MORPHOLOGY

$MAI_M = MAI_{CM} + MAI_{CS} + MAI_S$

$MQI_M = MQI_{CM} + MQI_{CS} + MQI_S$

where:

*M* is for morphology, *CM* is for morphological pattern, *CS* is for cross-section configuration and *S* is for substrate.

#### 2.1 MORPHOLOGICAL PATTERN

$MAI_{CM} = (F6 + F7 + F8 + A6/2 + A8 + CA1) / S_{\max}$

$MQI_{CM} = (S_{CM} \max / S_{\max}) - MAI_{CM}$

where:

$S_{CM} \max = \text{Max}(S_{CM \text{ tot}}) - S_{na(CM)}$ ;

$\text{Max}(S_{CM \text{ tot}}) = \text{Max}(F6) + \text{Max}(F7) + \text{Max}(F8) + \text{Max}(A6/2) + \text{Max}(A8) + \text{Max}(CA1)$

(sum of maximum scores of all CM indicators);

$Sna(CM)$  = sum of maximum scores of not applied CM indicators.

## 2.2 CROSS-SECTION CONFIGURATION

$$MAI_{CS} = (F9+A4/2+A9/2+A10/2+CA2+CA3)/Smax$$

$$MQI_{CS} = (S_{CS} max/Smax) - MAI_{CS}$$

where:

$$S_{CS} max = Max(S_{CS} tot) - Sna(CS);$$

$$Max(S_{CS} tot) = Max(F9) + Max(A4/2) + Max(A9/2) + Max(A10/2) + Max(CA2) + Max(CA3)$$

(sum of maximum scores of all CS indicators);

$Sna(CS)$  = sum of maximum scores of not applied CS indicators.

## 2.3 SUBSTRATE

$$MAI_S = (F10+F11+A9/2+A10/2+A11)/Smax$$

$$MQI_S = (S_S max/Smax) - MAI_S$$

where:

$$S_S max = Max(S_S tot) - Sna(S);$$

$$Max(S_S tot) = Max(F10) + Max(F11) + Max(A9/2) + Max(A10/2) + Max(A11)$$

(sum of maximum scores of all S indicators);

$Sna(S)$  = sum of maximum scores of not applied S indicators.

## 3. VEGETATION

$$MAI_{VE} = (F12+F13+A12)/Smax$$

$$MQI_{VE} = (S_{VE} max/Smax) - MAI_{VE}$$

where:

VE is for vegetation;

$$S_{VE} max = Max(S_{VE} tot) - Sna(VE);$$

$$Max(S_{VE} tot) = Max(F12) + Max(F13) + Max(A12) \text{ (sum of maximum scores of all VE indicators);}$$

$Sna(VE)$  = sum of maximum scores of not applied VE indicators.

As before, the sub-indices can be related to the maximum value that they can reach for a given category, by dividing overall value of MAI and MQI in the part relative to each category as follows:

### 1. CONTINUITY

$$MAI_C max = MQI_C max = S_C max/Smax$$

where:

$$S_C max = Max(S_C tot) - Sna(C) = S_{CL} max + S_{CLA} max;$$

$$Max(S_C tot) = Max(S_{CL} tot) + Max(S_{CLA} tot)$$

(sum of maximum scores of all C indicators, or sum of maximum scores of all CL and CLA indicators);

$$Sna(C) = Sna(CL) + Sna(CLA)$$

(sum of maximum scores of not applied C indicators, or sum of maximum scores of not applied CL and CLA indicators).

### 2. MORPHOLOGY

$$MAI_M max = MQI_M max = S_M max/Smax$$

where:

$$S_M max = Max(S_M tot) - Sna(M) = S_{CM} max + S_{CS} max + S_S max;$$

$$Max(S_M tot) = Max(S_{CM} tot) + Max(S_{CS} tot) + Max(S_S tot)$$

(sum of maximum scores of all M indicators, or sum of maximum scores of all CM, CS and S indicators);

$$Sna(M) = Sna(CM) + Sna(CS) + Sna(S)$$

(sum of maximum scores of not applied M indicators, or sum of maximum scores of not applied CM, CS and S indicators).

### 3. VEGETATION

$$MAI_{VE} max = MQI_{VE} max = S_{VE} max/Smax$$

## EXAMPLE OF COMPILED EVALUATION FORM

An example of a compiled evaluation form is reported as follows. This example is useful in understanding how to compile the forms and in accounting for the confidence degree in the calculation of the range of variability of MQI.

# Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

## EVALUATION FORMS FOR PARTLY CONFINED AND UNCONFINED CHANNELS

Version 2 - October 2016

### GENERALITY

Date 20 / 04 / 20 16 Operators J. Smith  
 Catchment Reform Stream/river Reform River  
 Upstream limit confluence Reform branch Downstream limit nearby Willington  
 Segment code 4 Reach Code 4-3 Reach length (m) 2.4 km

### DELINEATION OF SPATIAL UNITS

#### 1. Physiographic setting

Physiographic context P M=Mountains, H=Hills, P=Plain Landscape unit High plain

#### 2. Confinement

Confinement degree (%) 10-90 >90, 10-90, ≤10  
 Confinement index >n 1-1.5, 1.5-n, >n (n=5 single-thread or anabranching; n=2 braided or wandering)  
 Confinement class PC PC=Partly confined, U=Unconfined

#### 3. Channel morphology

Aerial photo or satellite image Aerial Flight Reform Region 2007 (name, year)  
 Sinuosity index ~ 1.2 1-1.05, 1.05-1.5, >1.5  
 Braiding index ~ 1.3 1-1.5, >1.5 Anabranching index 1 1-1.5, >1.5  
 River Type (BRT, Basic River Typology) W ST=Straight, S=Sinuous, M=Meandering,  
 W= Wandering, B= Braided, A= Anabranching

#### 4. Other elements for reach delineation

Upstream Tributary Downstream \_\_\_\_\_  
 change in geomorphic units, bed slope discontinuity, tributary, dam, artificial elements, change in confinement  
 and/or size of the floodplain, changes in grain size, other (specify) \_\_\_\_\_

### FURTHER CHARACTERIZATION

Drainage area (at the downstream limit) (km<sup>2</sup>) 760  
 Mean bed slope, S 0.0033 Mean channel width, W (m) 42  
 Bed sediment (dominant) G-C C=Clay, Si=Silt, Sa=Sand, G=Gravel, C=Cobbles, B=Boulders  
 Bed configuration \_\_\_\_\_ BR=bedrock, C=Cascade, SP=Step Pool, PB=Plane bed, RP=Riffle Pool, DR=Dune ripple  
 A= Artificial, NC= not classified (high depth or strong alteration)  
 River Type (ERT, Extended River Typology) \_\_\_\_\_ from 0 to 22 (GF= Groundwater-Fed)  
 Unit stream power ( $\omega=\gamma QS/W$ ) (when available) >10 ≤10, >10 W m<sup>-1</sup> Energy setting \_\_\_\_\_ LE=Low Energy

#### Additional available data / information

Sediment size, D<sub>50</sub> (mm) 35 Unit Ba(SU) Be=Bed, Ba=Bar (SU=surface layer, SUB=sublayer)  
 Discharges E M=measured, E=estimated, NA=not available  
 Gauging station (if M) \_\_\_\_\_ Mean annual discharge (m<sup>3</sup>/s) 24 Q<sub>1.5</sub> or Q<sub>2</sub> (m<sup>3</sup>/s) 235  
 Maximum discharges (indicate year and Q when known) Intense flood in 2009

### GEOMORPHOLOGICAL FUNCTIONALITY

#### Continuity

		part.	prog.	conf.
<b>F1</b>	<b>Longitudinal continuity in sediment and wood flux</b>			
A	Absence of alteration in the continuity of sediment and wood	0		
B	Slight alteration (obstacles to the flux but with no interception)	3		
C	Strong alteration (discontinuity of channel forms and interception of sediment and wood)	5	5	

Check dam intercepting bedload and creating a discontinuity of channel forms (disappearance of bars)

<b>F2</b>	<b>Presence of a modern floodplain</b>			
A	Presence of a continuous (>66% of the reach) and wide floodplain	0		
B1	Presence of a discontinuous (10+66%) but wide floodplain or >66% but narrow	2		
B2	Presence of a discontinuous (10+66%) and narrow floodplain	3		
C	Absence of a floodplain or negligible presence (≤10% of any width)	5	8	M +2

Not evaluated in the case of mountain streams along steep (>3%) alluvial fans

Some uncertainty for part of the reach whether it is a modern floodplain or a low terrace

part.: partial score (to circle) prog.: MQI progressive score confidence level between A and B  
 conf.: confidence level in the answer, with M=Medium, L=Low (High is omitted) confidence level between B and C

## Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

<b>F4</b>	<b>Processes of bank retreat</b>		
A	Bank erosion occurs for >10% and is distributed along >33% of the reach	①	
B	Bank erosion occurs for ≤10%, or for >10% but is concentrated along ≤33% of the reach or significant presence (>25%) of eroding banks by mass failures	2	
C	Complete absence (≤2%) or widespread presence (>50%) of eroding banks by mass failures	3	8

*Not evaluated in the case of Low Energy ERT types from 17 to 22 and Groundwater-Fed streams*

<b>F5</b>	<b>Presence of a potentially erodible corridor</b>		
A	Presence of a wide potentially erodible corridor (EC) for a length >66% of the reach	0	
B	Presence of a potentially EC of any width for 33-66% of the reach or for >66% but narrow	②	
C	Presence of a potentially EC of any width for ≤33% of the reach	3	10

### Morphology

#### Morphological pattern

<b>F7</b>	<b>Planform pattern</b>		
A	Absence (<5%) of alteration of the natural heterogeneity of geomorphic units and channel width	0	
B	Alterations for a limited portion of the reach (≤33%)	③	
C	Consistent alterations for a significant portion of the reach (>33%)	5	13

<b>F8</b>	<b>Presence of typical fluvial landforms in the floodplain</b>		
A	Presence of floodplain landforms (oxbow lakes, secondary channels, etc.)	①	
B	Presence of traces of landforms (abandoned during the last decades) but with possible reactivation	2	
C	Complete absence of floodplain landforms	3	13

#### Cross-section configuration

<b>F9</b>	<b>Variability of the cross-section</b>		
A	Absence (≤5%) of alteration of the cross-section natural heterogeneity (channel depth)	0	
B	Presence of alteration (cross-section homogeneity) for a limited portion of the reach (≤33%)	③	
C	Presence of alteration (cross-section homogeneity) for a significant portion of the reach (>33%)	5	16

#### Bed structure and substrate

<b>F10</b>	<b>Structure of the channel bed</b>		
A	Natural heterogeneity of bed sediments and no significant armouring, clogging or burial	0	
B	Evident armouring or clogging for ≤50% of the reach	2	
C1	Evident armouring or clogging (>50%), or burial (≤50%), or occasional substrate outcrops	⑤	
C2	Evident burial (>50%), or substrate outcrops or alteration by bed revetments (>33% of the reach)	6	21

*Not evaluated for deep rivers when it is not possible to observe the channel bed*

<b>F11</b>	<b>Presence of in-channel large wood</b>		
A	Significant presence of large wood along the whole reach (or "wood transport" reach)	①	
B	Negligible presence of large wood for ≤50% of the reach	2	
C	Negligible presence of large wood for >50% of the reach	3	21

*Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)*

### Vegetation in the fluvial corridor

<b>F12</b>	<b>Width of functional vegetation</b>		
A	High width of functional vegetation	0	
B	Medium width of functional vegetation	②	
C	Low width of functional vegetation	3	23

*Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)*

## Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

<b>F13</b>	<b>Linear extension of functional vegetation</b>		
A	Linear extension of functional vegetation >90% of maximum available length	0	
B	Linear extension of functional vegetation 33-90% of maximum available length	3	
C	Linear extension of functional vegetation ≤33% of maximum available length	5	26

*Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)*

### ARTIFICIALITY

#### Upstream alteration of longitudinal continuity

part. prog. conf.

<b>A1<sub>M</sub></b>	<b>Upstream alteration of flows with potentially relevant effects on channel morphology</b>		
A	No significant alteration (≤10%) of channel-forming discharges and with return interval >10 years	0	
B	Significant alteration (>10%) of discharges with return interval >10 years or release of increased low flows downstream dams during dry seasons	3	
C	Significant alteration (>10%) of channel-forming discharges	6	29

<b>A1<sub>H</sub></b>	<b>Upstream alteration of flows without potentially relevant effects on channel morphology</b>		
A	Absence of any type of structure altering flow discharges (dams or other abstractions)	0	
B	Presence in the catchment of one or more structures altering flow discharges	11	
C	Reach located between abstraction and restitution section of hydropower plant and/or reach immediately downstream of a hydropower reservoir	22	

*Evaluated for the application of the HMQI*

<b>A2</b>	<b>Upstream alteration of sediment discharges</b>		
A	Absence or negligible presence of structures for the interception of sediment fluxes (dams for drainage area ≤5% and/or check dams/abstraction weirs for drainage area ≤33%)	0	
B1	Dams (area 5-33%) and/or check dams/weirs with total bedload interception (area 33-66%) and/or check dams/weirs with partial interception (area >66%)	3	
B2	Dams (drainage area 33-66%) and/or check dams/weirs with total bedload interception (drainage area >66% or at the upstream boundary)	6	
C1	Dams for drainage area >66%	9	
C2	Dam at the upstream boundary of the reach	12	35

*A dam upstream*

#### Alteration of longitudinal continuity in the reach

<b>A3</b>	<b>Alteration of flows in the reach</b>		
A	No significant alteration (≤10%) of channel-forming discharges and with return interval >10 years	0	
B	Significant alteration (>10%) of discharges with return interval >10 years	3	
C	Significant alteration (>10%) of channel-forming discharges	6	35

<b>A4</b>	<b>Alteration of sediment discharge in the reach</b>		
A	Absence of structures for the interception of sediment fluxes (dams, check dams, abstraction weirs)	0	
B	Channels with S≤1%: consolidation check dams and/or abstraction weirs ≤1 every 1000 m <i>Steep channels (S&gt;1%): consolidation check dams ≤1 every 200 m and/or open check dams</i>	4	
C	Channels with S≤1%: consolidation check dams and/or abstraction weirs >1 every 1000 m <i>Steep channels (S&gt;1%): consolidation check dams &gt;1 every 200 m and/or retention check dams or presence of a dam or artificial reservoir at the downstream boundary (any bed slope)</i>	6	39

*Where transversal structures, including bed sills and ramps (see A9), are >1 every d1, add 6*

*Where structures, including bed sills and ramps (see A9), are >1 every d2, add 12*

*where d1=150 m and d2=100 m in steep channels, or d1=750 m and d2=500 m in channels with S≤1%*

*Two weirs*

## Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

A5 Crossing structures			
A	Absence of crossing structures (bridges, fords, culverts)	0	
B	Presence of some crossing structures ( $\leq 1$ every 1000 m in average in the reach)	2	
C	Presence of many crossing structures ( $> 1$ every 1000 m in average in the reach)	3	41

Three bridges

### Alteration of lateral continuity

A6 Bank protections			
A	Absence or localized presence of bank protections ( $\leq 5\%$ total length of the banks)	0	
B	Presence of protections for $\leq 33\%$ total length of the banks (sum of both banks)	3	
C	Presence of protections for $> 33\%$ total length of the banks (sum of both banks)	6	41
	For a high density of bank protection ( $> 50\%$ ) add	6	
	For an extremely high density of bank protection ( $> 80\%$ ) add	12	

A7 Artificial levees			
A	Absent or set-back levees, or presence of close and/or bank-edge levees $\leq 5\%$ bank length	0	
B	Bank-edge levees $\leq 50\%$ , or $\leq 33\%$ in case of total of close and/or bank edge $> 90\%$	3	
C	Bank-edge levees $> 50\%$ , or $> 33\%$ in case of total of close and/or bank edge $> 90\%$	6	41
	For a high density of bank-edge levees ( $> 66\%$ ) add	6	
	For an extremely high density of bank-edge levees ( $> 80\%$ ) add	12	

### Alteration of channel morphology and/or substrate

A8 Artificial changes of river course			
A	Absence of artificial changes of river course in the past (meanders cut-off, channel diversions, etc.)	0	
B	Presence of changes of river course for $\leq 10\%$ of the reach length	2	
C	Presence of changes of river course for $> 10\%$ of the reach length	3	41
	In case of historical drainage and dredged works for $> 50\%$ of the reach, add	6	
	In case of historical drainage and dredged works for $> 80\%$ of the reach, add (when an additional score for A6 and/or A7 is not already applied)	12	

A9 Other bed stabilization structures			
A	Absence of structures (bed sills/ramps) and revetments	0	
B	Sills or ramps ( $\leq 1$ every $d$ ) and/or revetments $\leq 25\%$ permeable and/or $\leq 15\%$ impermeable	3	
C1	Sills or ramps ( $> 1$ every $d$ ) and/or revetments $\leq 50\%$ permeable and/or $\leq 33\%$ impermeable	6	
C2	Revetments $> 50\%$ permeable and/or $> 33\%$ impermeable	8	44
$d = 200$ m in steep channels ( $S > 1\%$ ); $d = 1000$ m in channels with $S \leq 1\%$			
	For a high density of bed revetment (impermeable $> 50\%$ or permeable $> 80\%$ ) add	6	
	For an extremely high density of bed revetment (impermeable $> 80\%$ ) add	12	

Two sills

### Intervention of maintenance and removal

A10 Sediment removal			
A	Absence of recent (last 20 years) and past (last 100 years) significant sediment removal activities	0	
B1	Sediment removal activity in the past (last 100 years) but absent during last 20 years	3	
B2	Recent sediment removal activity (last 20 years) but absent in the past (last 100 years)	4	
C	Sediment removal activity either in the past (last 100 years) and during last 20 years	6	50

There is some uncertainty whether the activity in the past was significant

A11 Wood removal			
A	Absence of removal of woody material at least during the last 20 years	0	
B	Partial removal of woody material during the last 20 years	2	
C	Total removal of woody material during the last 20 years	5	52

Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)



## Morphological Quality Index (MQI)

A12 Vegetation management			
A	No cutting interventions on riparian vegetation (last 20 years) and aquatic vegetation (last 5 years)	0	
B	Selective cuts and/or clear cuts of riparian vegetation ≤50% of the reach and partial or no cutting of aquatic vegetation, or no cutting of riparian but partial or total cutting of aquatic vegetation	2	
C	Clear cuts of riparian vegetation >50% of the reach, or selective cuts and/or clear cuts of riparian vegetation ≤50% of the reach but total cutting of aquatic vegetation	5	52

Not evaluated above the tree-line and in streams with natural absence of riparian vegetation (e.g. north-European tundra)

### CHANNEL ADJUSTMENTS

CA1 Adjustments in channel pattern			
A	Absence of changes of channel pattern since 1930s - 1960s	0	
B	Change to a similar channel pattern since 1930s - 1960s	3	
C	Change to a different channel pattern since 1930s - 1960s	6	55

Not evaluated in the case of small streams where resolution of aerial photos is insufficient

CA2 Adjustments in channel width			
A	Absent or limited changes (≤15%) since 1930s - 1960s	0	
B	Moderate changes (15÷35%) since 1930s - 1960s	3	
C	Intense changes (>35%) since 1930s - 1960s	6	61

Not evaluated in the case of small streams where resolution of aerial photos is insufficient

CA3 Bed-level adjustments			
A	Negligible bed-level changes (≤0.5 m)	0	
B	Limited to moderate bed-level changes (0.5÷3 m)	4	
C1	Intense bed-level changes (>3 m)	8	
C2	Very intense bed-level changes (>6 m)	12	65

Not evaluated in the case of absolute lack of data, information and field evidences

Total deviation (MQI):

Stot = 65 63÷67

Maximum deviation:

Smax = 142 - Sna = 142

where Sna = sum of maximum scores for those indicators that have not been applied

Morphological Alteration Index:

MAI = Stot / Smax = 0.46 0.44÷0.47

if Stot>Smax it is assumed MAI=1

Morphological Quality Index:

MQI=1-MAI = 0.54 0.53÷0.56

Morphological Quality class of the reach

Moderate

0≤MQI<0.3: Very Poor or Bad; 0.3≤MQI<0.5: Poor; 0.5≤MQI<0.7: Moderate;  
0.7≤MQI<0.85: Good; 0.85≤MQI≤1.0: Very Good or High

Total deviation (HMQUI):

Stot + S(A1<sub>H</sub>) = 76

Hydro-Morphological Quality Index:

HMQUI=1-Stot+S(A1<sub>H</sub>) / Smax = 0.46

Hydro-Morphological Quality class of the reach

Poor

0≤HMQUI<0.3: Very Poor or Bad; 0.3≤HMQUI<0.5: Poor; 0.5≤HMQUI<0.7: Moderate;  
0.7≤HMQUI<0.85: Good; 0.85≤HMQUI≤1.0: Very Good or High



### A3.8 References

- Berg, M.A., Allen, D.M., 2007. Low flow variability in groundwater-fed streams. *Canadian Water Resources Journal*, 32(3), 227-248.
- Carolli, M., Vanzo, D., Siviglia, A., Zolezzi, G., Bruno, M.C., Alfredsen, K. 2015. A simple procedure for the assessment of hydropeaking flow alterations applied to several European streams. *Aquatic Sciences*, 77 (4), 639-653.
- Fontana, A., Mozzi, P., Marchetti, M., 2014. Alluvial fans and megafans along the southern side of the Alps. *Sedimentary Geology*, 301, 150-171.
- Garófano-Gómez, V., Martínez-Capel, F., Bertoldi, W., Gurnell, A., Estornell, J., Segura-Beltrán, F., 2013. Six decades of changes in the riparian corridor of a Mediterranean river: a synthetic analysis based on historical data sources. *Ecohydrology*, 6(4), 536-553.
- Gurnell, A.M., Grabowski, R.C. 2016. *Vegetation-hydrogeomorphology interactions in a low-energy, human-impacted river. River Research and Applications* 32(2) 202-215.
- Gurnell, A.M., van Oosterhout, M.P., de Vlieger, B., Goodson, J.M., 2006. Reach-scale interactions between aquatic plants and physical habitat: River Frome, Dorset. *River Research and Applications*, 22, 667-680.
- ISPRA, 2009. Implementazione della Direttiva 2000/60/CE - Analisi e valutazione degli aspetti idromorfologici. <http://www.sintai.sinanet.apat.it/view/index.faces>.
- Johnson, W.C., 1994. Woodland expansion in the Platte River, Nebraska, patterns and causes. *Ecol. Monogr.* 64: 45-84.
- Jones, C.G., Lawton, J.H., Shachak, M., 1994. Organisms as ecosystem engineers. *Oikos*, 69, 373-386.
- Liébault, F., Piégay, H., 2002. Causes of 20th century channel narrowing in mountain and piedmont rivers of southeastern France. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*, 27, 425-444.
- Liébault, F., Lallias-Tacon, S., Cassel, M., Talaska, N., 2012. Long profile responses of Alpine braided rivers in SE France. *River Research and Applications*, DOI: 10.1002/rra.2615.
- Magdaleno, F., Fernandez-Yuste, J.A., 2013. Evolution of the riparian forest corridor in a large Mediterranean river system. *Riparian Ecology and Conservation*, 1, 36-45.
- Nanson, G.C., Croke, J.C., 1992. A genetic classification of floodplains. *Geomorphology*, 4 (6), 459-486.
- O'Hare, J.M., O'Hare, M.T., Gurnell, A.M., Dunbar, M.J., Scarlett, P.D., Laize, C., 2011. Physical constraints on the distribution of macrophytes linked with flow and sediment dynamics in British rivers. *River Research and Applications*, 27, 671-683.

- Petts, G.E., Gurnell, A.M., 2013. Hydrogeomorphic effects of reservoirs, dams and diversions. In: Shroder, J. (Editor in chief), James, L.A., Harden, C.P., Clague, J.J. (Eds.), *Treatise on Geomorphology*. Academic Press, San Diego, CA, vol. 13, *Geomorphology of Human Disturbances, Climate Change, and Natural Hazards*, 96–114.
- Rinaldi, M., 2003. Recent channel adjustments in alluvial rivers of Tuscany, Central Italy. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*, 28 (6), 587-608.
- Rinaldi, M., Simon, A., 1998. Bed-level adjustments in the Arno River, central Italy. *Geomorphology* 22, 57-71.
- Sennatt, K.M., Salant, N.L., Renshaw, C.E., Magilligan F.J., 2008. Assessment of methods for measuring embeddedness: application to sedimentation in flow regulated streams. *Journal of American Water Resources Association* 42(6), 1671-1682.
- Surian, N., Rinaldi, M., 2003. Morphological response to river engineering and management in alluvial channels in Italy. *Geomorphology*, 50 (4), 307-326.
- Surian, N., Rinaldi, M., Pellegrini, L., Audisio, C., Maraga, F., Teruggi, L., Turitto, O., Ziliani, L., 2009. Channel adjustments in northern and central Italy over the last 200 years. In: James L.A., Rathburn S.L., Whittecar G.R. (eds.), *Management and Restoration of Fluvial Systems with Broad Historical Changes and Human Impacts*, Geological Society of America Special Paper 451, pp. 83-95.
- Wyżga, B., 2008. A review on channel incision in the Polish Carpathian rivers during the 20th century. In: Habersack, H., Piégay, H., Rinaldi, M. (Eds), *Gravel-Bed Rivers VI – From process understanding to river restoration*, *Developments in Earth Surface Processes*, 11, Elsevier, pp. 525-555